

Matthew B. Lehr (Bar No. 213139)  
Diem-Suong T. Nguyen (Bar No. 237557)  
Chung G. Suh (Bar No. 244889)  
DAVIS POLK & WARDWELL  
1600 El Camino Real  
Menlo Park, California 94025  
Telephone: (650) 752-2000  
Facsimile: (650) 752-2111

Attorneys for Plaintiff  
VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA  
SAN FRANCISCO DIVISION

VNUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.,	)	CASE NO. C08-03129 MMC
	)	
Plaintiff,	)	<b>STIPULATION AND [PROPOSED</b>
	)	<b>ORDER] FOR VNUS TO FILE SECOND</b>
v.	)	<b>AMENDED COMPLAINT</b>
	)	
BIOLITEC, INC., DORNIER MEDTECH	)	
AMERICA, INC., and NEW STAR LASERS,	)	
INC. d/b/a COOLTOUCH, INC., DAVID S.	)	
CENTANNI, and TYRELL L. SCHIEK	)	
	)	
Defendants.	)	

---

Pursuant to Rule 15(a)(2) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, Plaintiff VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc. ("VNUS") and Defendants biolitec, Inc. ("biolitec") and New Star Lasers, Inc. d/b/a CoolTouch, Inc. ("CoolTouch") stipulate as follows:

WHEREAS VNUS filed a complaint against Defendants biolitec, Dornier MedTech America, Inc., CoolTouch, David S. Centanni and Tyrell L. Schiek (collectively "Defendants") in the above-captioned action on June 27, 2008 and filed a First Amended Complaint on July 10, 2008.

WHEREAS VNUS served biolitec and CoolTouch with the First Amended Complaint on July 11, 2008 and July 23, 2008, respectively.

WHEREAS CoolTouch filed an answer and counterclaims against VNUS in response to the First Amended Complaint on August 6, 2008.

WHEREAS pursuant to Rule 15(a)(2) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, VNUS has requested consent from biolitec and CoolTouch—the only Defendants that have been served to date in this action—to file a second amended complaint adding allegations of infringement of U.S Patent No. 7,406,970, which is the recently issued continuation of one of the original patents-in-suit.

NOW THEREFORE, by and through their respective counsel of record, the undersigned parties stipulate that VNUS may file the Second Amended Complaint, attached hereto as Exhibit A and lodged concurrently herewith.

Dated: August 15, 2008

ATTORNEYS FOR PLAINTIFF  
VNUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

/s/ Matthew B. Lehr  
Matthew B. Lehr (Bar No. 213139)  
Diem-Suong T. Nguyen (Bar No. 237557)  
Chung G. Suh (Bar No. 244889)  
DAVIS POLK & WARDWELL  
1600 El Camino Real  
Menlo Park, CA 94025  
(650) 752-2000/(650) 752-2111 (fax)  
[nguyen@dpw.com](mailto:nguyen@dpw.com)

1 Dated: August 15, 2008

ATTORNEYS FOR DEFENDANT  
BIOLITEC, INC.

3 /s/ Michael N. Rader

4 Michael A. Albert  
5 Michael N. Rader  
6 WOLF, GREENFIELD & SACKS, P.C.  
7 600 Atlantic Avenue  
8 Boston, MA 02210  
9 (617) 720-3500/(617) 720-2441 (fax)  
10 [mrader@wolfgreenfield.com](mailto:mrader@wolfgreenfield.com)

8 Dated: August 15, 2008

ATTORNEYS FOR DEFENDANT  
NEW STAR LASERS, INC. d/b/a  
COOLTOUCH, INC.

10 /s/ James W. Geriak

11 James W. Geriak (Bar No. 32871)  
12 Allan W. Jansen (Bar No. 81992)  
13 Mark Stirrat (Bar No. 229448)  
14 ORRICK, HERRINGTON & SUTCLIFFE LLP  
15 4 Park Plaza, Suite 1600  
16 Irvine, CA 92614-2558  
17 (949) 567-6700/(949) 567-6710 (fax)  
18 [jgeriak@orrick.com](mailto:jgeriak@orrick.com)

17 **PURSUANT TO STIPULATION, IT IS SO ORDERED.**

19 Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, 2008

20 \_\_\_\_\_  
21 MAXINE M. CHESNEY  
22 United States District Judge  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28

Matthew B. Lehr (Bar No. 213139)  
Diem-Suong T. Nguyen (Bar No. 237557)  
Chung G. Suh (Bar No. 244889)  
DAVIS POLK & WARDWELL  
1600 El Camino Real  
Menlo Park, California 94025  
Telephone: (650) 752-2000  
Facsimile: (650) 752-2111

Attorneys for Plaintiff  
VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA  
SAN FRANCISCO DIVISION

VNUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.,	)	CASE NO. C08-03129 MMC
	)	
Plaintiff,	)	<b>SECOND AMENDED COMPLAINT</b>
	)	<b>FOR PATENT INFRINGEMENT</b>
v.	)	
	)	<b>DEMAND FOR JURY TRIAL</b>
BIOLITEC, INC., DORNIER MEDTECH	)	
AMERICA, INC., and NEW STAR LASERS,	)	
INC. d/b/a COOLTOUCH, INC., DAVID S.	)	
CENTANNI, and TYRELL L. SCHIEK	)	
	)	
Defendants.	)	

1 Plaintiff VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc. ("VNUS") alleges for its complaint against  
2 Defendants biolitec, Inc. ("Biolitec"), Dornier MedTech America, Inc. ("Dornier"), New Star  
3 Lasers, Inc. d/b/a CoolTouch, Inc. ("CoolTouch"), David S. Centanni ("Centanni") and Tyrell L.  
4 Schiek ("Schiek") (collectively "Defendants") as follows:

5 **JURISDICTION AND VENUE**

6 1. This is an action for patent infringement arising under the Patent Laws of the United  
7 States, 35 U.S.C. § 1 et seq.

8 2. This Court has subject matter jurisdiction pursuant to 28 U.S.C. §§ 1331 and  
9 1338(a).

10 3. This Court has personal jurisdiction because, on information and belief, Defendants  
11 do business and have committed infringing activities in the state of California, including within this  
12 district. On information and belief, Centanni and Schiek have promoted and sold products used for  
13 infringement to physicians and medical facilities in this district.

14 4. Venue is proper in this district pursuant to 28 U.S.C. §§ 1391(b), 1391(c) and  
15 1400(b).

16 **INTRADISTRICT ASSIGNMENT**

17 5. This case is exempt from intradistrict assignment pursuant to Civil L. R. 3-2(c)  
18 because it is a patent infringement action.

19 **PARTIES**

20 6. VNUS is a Delaware corporation having its principal executive offices at 5799  
21 Fontanoso Way, San Jose, CA 95138.

22 7. On information and belief, Biolitec is a New Jersey corporation with a place of  
23 business at 515 Shaker Road, East Longmeadow, MA 01028.

24 8. On information and belief, Dornier is a Georgia corporation with a place of business  
25 at 1155 Roberts Blvd., Kennesaw, GA 30144. The name and address of Dornier's registered agent  
26 in California is: Lawyers Incorporating Service, 2730 Gateway Oaks Drive, Suite 100,  
27 Sacramento, CA 95833.

9. On information and belief, CoolTouch is a California corporation with a place of business at 9085 Foothills Blvd., Roseville, CA 95747.

10. On information and belief, Centanni is a principal of Total Vein Solutions, LLC d/b/a Total Vein Systems, residing at 4950 Woodway Drive, No. 606, Houston, TX 77056.

11. On information and belief, Schiek is a principal of Total Vein Solutions, LLC d/b/a Total Vein Systems, residing at 606 East 8th Street, Houston, TX 77007.

## THE PATENTS

12. VNUS owns all right, title and interest in U.S. Patent Nos. 6,752,803 entitled "METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION" (the "'803 patent"); 6,769,433 entitled "EXPANDABLE VEIN LIGATOR CATHETER HAVING MULTIPLE ELECTRODE LEADS, AND METHOD" (the "'433 patent"); 6,258,084 entitled "METHOD FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION" (the "'084 patent"); 7,396,355 entitled "METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION" (the "'355 patent"); and 7,406,970 entitled "METHOD OF USING EXPANDABLE VEIN LIGATOR CATHETER HAVING MULTIPLE ELECTRODE LEADS" (the "'970 patent"). Copies of these patents are attached hereto as Exhibits 1-5.

## THE INFRINGEMENT

13. Biolitec has directly and/or indirectly infringed (including contributory and/or inducement of infringement) the claims of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents by making, using, selling, offering to sell and/or instructing users how to use products for endovenous laser treatment, including the Biolitec "ELVeS – Endo Laser Vein System" and "ELVeS PL." Biolitec continues to directly and/or indirectly infringe (including contributory and/or inducement of infringement) the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents.

14. Dornier has directly and/or indirectly infringed (including contributory and/or inducement of infringement) the claims of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents by making,

1 using, selling, offering to sell and/or instructing users how to use products for endovenous laser  
2 treatment, including laser fibers, the Dornier D940 laser system, and the Medilas D Family Lasers,  
3 Fibertom, SkinPulse and SkinPulse S lasers. Dornier continues to directly and/or indirectly  
4 infringe (including contributory and/or inducement of infringement) the '803, '433, '084, '355 and  
5 '970 patents.

6 15. CoolTouch has directly and/or indirectly infringed (including contributory and/or  
7 inducement of infringement) the claims of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents by making,  
8 using, selling, offering to sell and/or instructing users how to use products for endovenous laser  
9 treatment, including the "CoolTouch CTEV System," laser fibers, pull-back devices and lasers.  
10 CoolTouch continues to directly and/or indirectly infringe (including contributory and/or  
11 inducement of infringement) the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents.

12 16. Centanni and Schiek have directly and/or indirectly infringed (including  
13 contributory and/or inducement of infringement) the claims of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970  
14 patents by making, using, selling, offering to sell and/or instructing users how to use products for  
15 endovenous laser treatment, including laser fibers and related equipment, under the trade names  
16 "Total Vein Systems" and "Total Vein Solutions." Centanni and Schiek continue to directly and/or  
17 indirectly infringe (including contributory and/or inducement of infringement) the '803, '433, '084,  
18 '355 and '970 patents.

19 17. VNUS has been damaged by Defendants' infringing activities and will be  
20 irreparably injured by their continued infringement unless Defendants are enjoined by this Court.

21 18. On information and belief, Defendants' infringement of the '803, '433, '084, '355  
22 and '970 patents has been and is willful and will continue unless enjoined by this Court.

23 **RELIEF REQUESTED**

24 WHEREFORE, VNUS prays that judgment be entered in its favor, that:

25 (a) Defendants have infringed and are infringing the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970  
26 patents;

27 (b) Defendants' infringement of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents has been  
28 and is willful;

(c) Defendants be preliminarily and permanently enjoined, along with their officers, directors, agents, employees, attorneys, parents, subsidiaries, and all others acting by or through Defendants, controlled by Defendants, or acting in concert or participating with Defendants, from further infringing the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents;

(d) Defendants account to VNUS for damages adequate to compensate for Defendants' infringement of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents and that such damages be awarded to VNUS, including prejudgment and postjudgment interest;

(e) VNUS's damages be trebled as a result of Defendants' willful infringement of the '803, '433, '084, '355 and '970 patents;

(f) This case be adjudged an exceptional case and that the Court award VNUS its costs, expenses and attorneys' fees incurred in bringing and prosecuting this action; and

(g) VNUS be awarded such further and additional relief as the Court deems just and proper.

**DEMAND FOR JURY TRIAL**

VNUS hereby demands a trial by jury on its claims for patent infringement.

Dated: August [ ], 2008

Respectfully Submitted,

ATTORNEYS FOR PLAINTIFF  
VNUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Matthew B. Lehr (Bar No. 213139)  
Diem-Suong T. Nguyen (Bar No. 237557)  
Chung G. Suh (Bar No. 244889)  
DAVIS POLK & WARDWELL  
1600 El Camino Real  
Menlo Park, CA 94025  
(650) 752-2000/(650) 752-2111 (fax)  
mlehr@dpw.com  
nguyen@dpw.com  
gsuh@dpw.com



# **EXHIBIT 1**



US006752803B2

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Goldman et al.**

(10) Patent No.: **US 6,752,803 B2**  
(45) Date of Patent: **\*Jun. 22, 2004**

(54) **METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION**

659,409 A 10/1900 Mosher  
833,759 A 10/1906 Sourwine

(List continued on next page.)

#### FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE 35 16830 A1 11/1986  
EP 0 189 327 A2 7/1986  
EP 0 629 382 A1 12/1994

(List continued on next page.)

#### OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Politowski, et al., *Complications And Difficulties In Electrocoagulation Of Varices Of The Lower Extremities*, Surgery, Jun. 1966, vol. 59, No. 6, pp. 932-934.

(List continued on next page.)

*Primary Examiner*—Rosiland Rollins

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Fulwider Patton Lee & Utech, LLP

(75) Inventors: **Mitchel P. Goldman**, La Jolla, CA (US); **Robert A. Weiss**, Baltimore, MD (US); **Arthur W. Zikorus**, San Jose, CA (US); **James G. Chandler**, Boulder, CO (US)

(73) Assignee: **VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.**, San Jose, CA (US)

(\*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/899,885**

(22) Filed: **Jul. 6, 2001**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2001/0041888 A1 Nov. 15, 2001

#### Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 09/267,127, filed on Mar. 10, 1999, now Pat. No. 6,258,084, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 09/138,472, filed on Aug. 21, 1998, now Pat. No. 6,179,832, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/927,251, filed on Sep. 11, 1997, now Pat. No. 6,200,312.

(51) Int. Cl.<sup>7</sup> ..... **A61B 18/04**

(52) U.S. Cl. .... **606/32; 128/898; 606/41**

(58) Field of Search ..... **128/898; 606/27-29, 606/31, 32, 34, 41, 42; 607/96, 98, 100-102, 104-106**

(56) **References Cited**

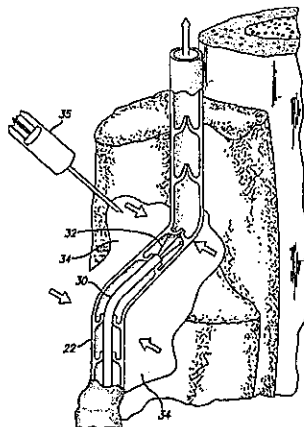
#### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

373,339 A 11/1887 Hamilton

(57) **ABSTRACT**

An electrode catheter is introduced into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein, and is positioned at a treatment site within the structure. Tumescent fluid is injected into the tissue surrounding the treatment site to produce tumescence of the surrounding tissue which then compresses the vein. The solution may include an anesthetic, and may further include a vasoconstrictive drug that shrinks blood vessels. The tumescent swelling in the surrounding tissue causes the hollow anatomical structure to become compressed, thereby exsanguinating the treatment site. Energy is applied by an electrode catheter in apposition with the vein wall to create a heating effect. The heating effect causes the hollow anatomical structure to become molded and durably assume the compressed dimensions caused by the tumescent technique. The electrode catheter can be moved within the structure so as to apply energy to a large section of the hollow anatomic structure. In a further aspect, the location of the electrodes is determined by impedance monitoring. Also, temperature sensors at the treatment site are averaged to determine the site temperature.

**20 Claims, 6 Drawing Sheets**



## US 6,752,803 B2

Page 2

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

985,865 A 3/1911 Turner, Jr.  
 3,230,957 A 1/1966 Seifert  
 3,301,258 A 1/1967 Werner et al.  
 3,552,382 A 1/1971 Mount  
 3,557,794 A 1/1971 Van Patten  
 3,920,021 A 11/1975 Hiltbrandt  
 4,016,886 A 4/1977 Doss et al.  
 4,043,338 A 8/1977 Homm et al.  
 4,119,102 A 10/1978 LeVeen  
 4,154,246 A 5/1979 LeVeen  
 4,312,364 A 1/1982 Convert et al.  
 4,346,715 A 8/1982 Gammell  
 4,522,205 A 6/1985 Taylor et al.  
 4,643,186 A 2/1987 Rosen et al.  
 4,660,571 A 4/1987 Hess et al.  
 4,664,120 A 5/1987 Hess  
 4,699,147 A 10/1987 Chilson et al.  
 4,709,698 A 12/1987 Johnston et al.  
 4,765,331 A 8/1988 Petrucci et al.  
 4,776,349 A 10/1988 Nashef et al.  
 4,807,620 A 2/1989 Strul et al.  
 4,823,812 A 4/1989 Eshel et al.  
 4,945,912 A 8/1990 Langberg  
 4,966,597 A 10/1990 Cosman  
 4,976,711 A 12/1990 Parins et al.  
 4,979,948 A 12/1990 Geddes et al.  
 5,010,894 A 4/1991 Edhag  
 5,057,107 A 10/1991 Parins et al.  
 5,078,717 A 1/1992 Parins et al.  
 5,117,828 A 6/1992 Metzger et al.  
 5,122,137 A 6/1992 Lennox  
 5,156,151 A 10/1992 Imran  
 5,188,602 A 2/1993 Nichols  
 5,215,103 A 6/1993 Desai  
 5,255,678 A 10/1993 Deslauriers et al.  
 5,263,493 A 11/1993 Avitall  
 5,275,610 A 1/1994 Eberbach  
 5,293,869 A 3/1994 Edwards et al.  
 5,383,917 A 1/1995 Desai et al.  
 5,397,339 A 3/1995 Desai  
 5,405,322 A 4/1995 Lennox et al.  
 5,409,000 A 4/1995 Imran  
 5,411,025 A 5/1995 Webster, Jr.  
 5,423,815 A 6/1995 Fugo  
 5,437,664 A 8/1995 Cohen et al.  
 5,449,381 A 9/1995 Imran  
 5,458,596 A 10/1995 Lax et al.  
 5,465,717 A 11/1995 Imran et al.  
 5,472,441 A 12/1995 Edwards et al.  
 5,505,730 A 4/1996 Edwards  
 5,514,130 A 5/1996 Baker  
 5,545,161 A 8/1996 Imran  
 5,556,396 A 9/1996 Cohen et al.  
 5,643,257 A 7/1997 Cohen et al.  
 5,709,224 A 1/1998 Behl et al.  
 5,810,804 A 9/1998 Gough et al.  
 5,817,092 A 10/1998 Behl  
 5,827,268 A 10/1998 Laufer  
 5,863,290 A 1/1999 Gough et al.  
 5,868,740 A 2/1999 LeVeen et al.  
 5,916,235 A 6/1999 Guglielmi  
 6,036,687 A 3/2000 Laufer et al.  
 6,210,402 B1 4/2001 Olsen et al.  
 6,228,082 B1 \* 5/2001 Baker et al. .... 606/41  
 6,258,084 B1 \* 7/2001 Goldman et al. .... 606/32  
 6,401,719 B1 \* 6/2002 Farley et al. .... 128/898

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0 727 184 A1 8/1996

EP 0 738 501 A1 10/1996  
 GB 2 333 964 8/1999  
 WO WO 92/12681 8/1992  
 WO WO 93/21846 11/1993  
 WO WO 94/07446 4/1994  
 WO WO 94/21170 9/1994  
 WO WO 95/10236 4/1995  
 WO WO 95/10322 4/1995  
 WO WO 95/31142 11/1995  
 WO WO 96/32885 10/1996  
 WO WO 97/06739 2/1997  
 WO WO 97/17892 5/1997  
 WO WO 97/32532 9/1997  
 WO WO 98/55072 12/1997  
 WO WO 98/18393 5/1998  
 WO WO 98/19613 5/1998

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Proebstle, et al., *High Ligation And Stripping Of The Long Saphenous Vein Using The Tumescant Technique For Local Anesthesia*, Dermatol. Surg. 1998, vol. 24:149-153.  
 Smith, et al., *Tumescant Anesthesia in Ambulatory Phlebectomy*, Dermatol. Surg. 1998, vol. 24:453-456.  
 Keel, et al., *Tumescant Anesthesia in Ambulatory Phlebectomy: Addition of Epinephrine*, Dermatol. Surg., May 1999; vol. 25: 371-372.  
 Klein, *Tumescant Technique For Local Anesthesia Improves Safety In Large-Volume Liposuction*, Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, Nov. 1993, pp. 1085-1098.  
 Proebstle, et al., *Endovenous Treatment Of The Greater Saphenous Vein With A 940-nm Diode Laser: Thrombotic Occlusion After Endoluminal Thermal Damage By Laser-Generated Steam Bubbles*, Journal of Vascular Surgery, Apr. 2002, pp. 727-736.  
 Navarro, et al., *Endovenous Laser: A New Minimally Invasive Method of Treatment For Varicose Veins—Preliminary Observations Using An 810 nm Diode Laser*, Dermatol. Surg., Feb. 2001, vol. 27:117-122.  
 Min, *Percutaneous Endovenous Laser Treatment of Varicose Veins*, ACP 14th Annual Congress—Abstract (2000), p. 236.  
 Bush, et al., *Treating Saphenous Vein Insufficiency With A 940 nm Laser*.  
 Min, et al., *Endovenous Laser Treatment Of The Incompetent Greater Saphenous Vein*, J. Vasc. Interv. Radiol., 2001, vol. 12:1167-1171.  
 Aaron, M.D., et al., *The Medical Letter on Drugs and Therapeutics*, Jul. 12, 1968 at 53-55.  
 Watts, *Endovenous Diathermy Destruction of Internal Saphenous*, British Medical Journal, Oct. 7, 1972, p. 53.  
 O'Reilly, *Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis as a Unit of the Armamentarium for the Attack on Varicose Veins*, The Medical Journal of Australia, Jun. 1, 1974, p. 900.  
 O'Reilly, *Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins*, The Australian, New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 47, No. 3, Jun. 1977, pp. 393-395.  
 Brunelle, M.D., et al. *A Bipolar Electrode For Vascular Electrocoagulation With Alternating Current*, Technical Notes, Oct. 1980, 239-240.  
 O'Reilly, *A Technique of Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins*, The Australian, New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 51, No. 4, Aug. 1981, pp. 379-382.  
 Cragg et al., *Endovascular Diathermic Vessel Occlusion*, Diagnostic Radiology, 144: 303-308, Jul. 1982.

US 6,752,803 B2

Page 3

---

Ogawa, M.D., et al. *Electrothrombosis As A Treatment Of Cirroid Angioma In The Face and Scalp and Varicosis of the Leg*, Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, Sep. 1982, vol. 3, at 310-318.

van Bemmelen, *Quantitative Segmental Evaluation of Venous Valvular Reflux with Duplex Ultrasound Scanning*, J. Vasc. Surg. 1989, 10: 425-431.

Partsch, *Compression Therapy of the Legs*, J. Dermatol. Surg. 1991; 17:79-805.

Sarin et al., *Mechanism of Action of External Compression on Venous Function*, J. Surg., vol. 79, No. 6, Jun. 1992.

Gradman, *Venoscopic Obliteration of Variceal Tributaries Using Monopolar Electrocautery*, Journal of Dermatology Surgery Oncology, 1994, 20, p. 482-485.

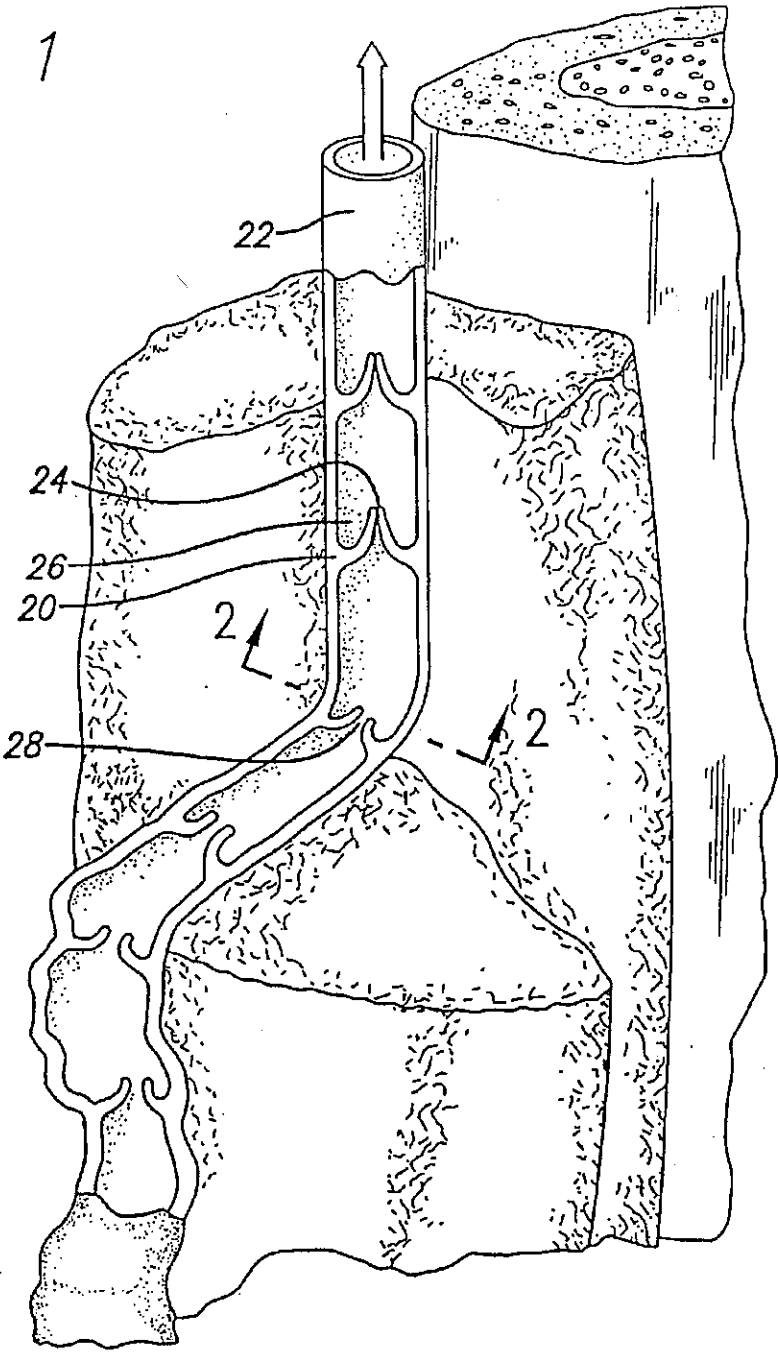
Inturri, *Pathophysiology of Portal Hypertension*, Journal of Vascular Technology 19 (5-6):271-276, Sep.-Dec. 1995.

Money, *Endovascular Electroablation of Peripheral Veins*, 22<sup>nd</sup> Annual Symposium, Current Critical Problems, New Horizons and Techniques in Vascular and Endovascular Surgery (Nov. 1995).

Crockett, et al., *Preliminary Experience With An Endovascular Catheter For Electrocoagulation of Peripheral Veins*, The Journal of Vascular Technology, Winter 1996, at 19-22.

\* cited by examiner

FIG. 1

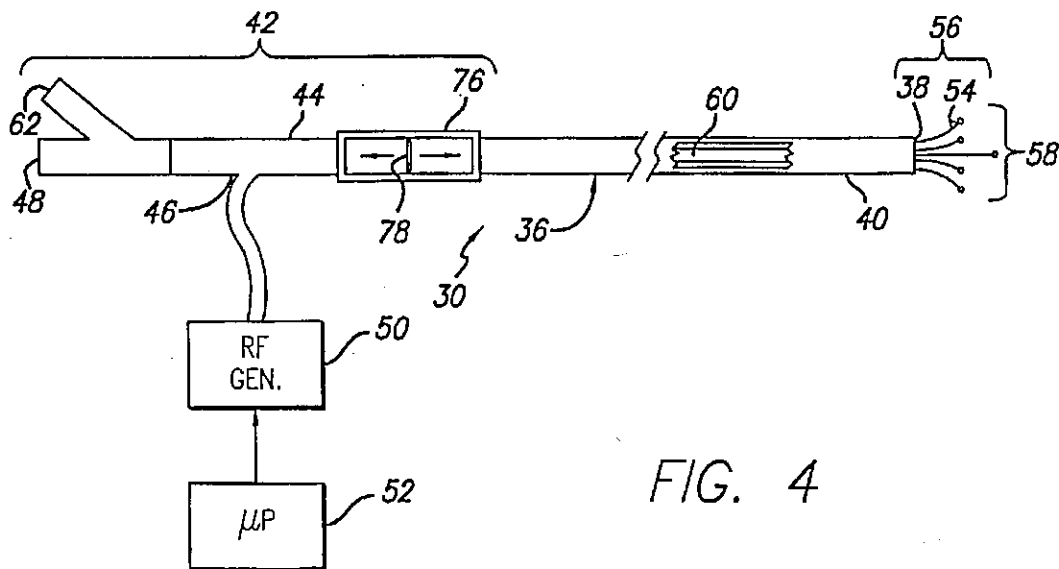
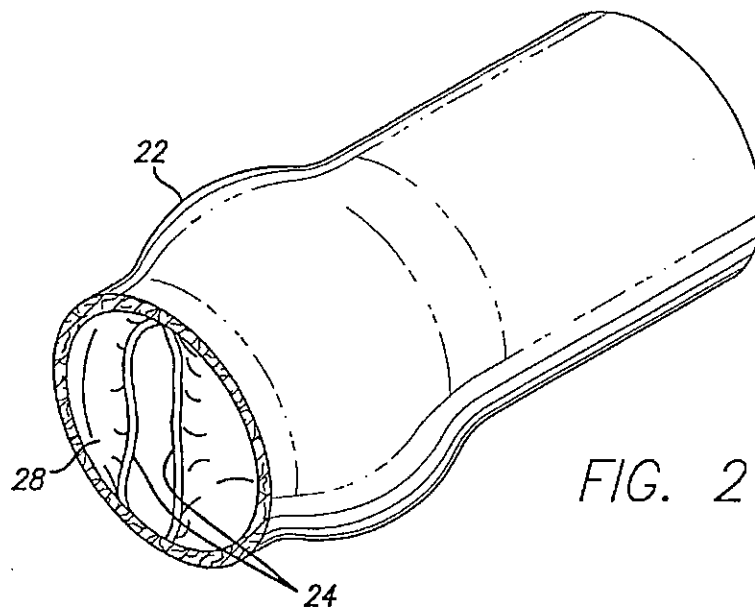


U.S. Patent

Jun. 22, 2004

Sheet 2 of 6

US 6,752,803 B2



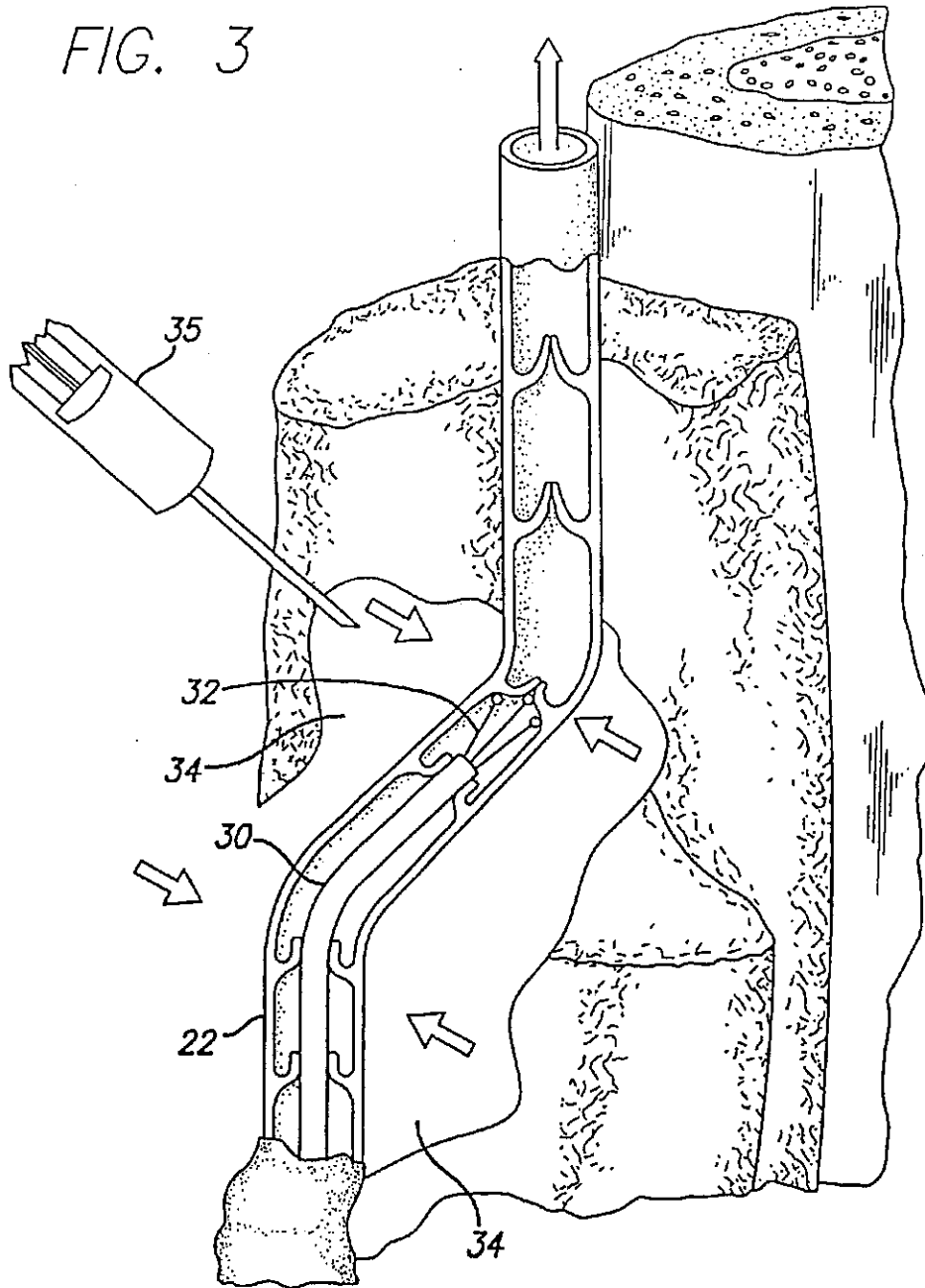
U.S. Patent

Jun. 22, 2004

Sheet 3 of 6

US 6,752,803 B2

FIG. 3



U.S. Patent

Jun. 22, 2004

Sheet 4 of 6

US 6,752,803 B2

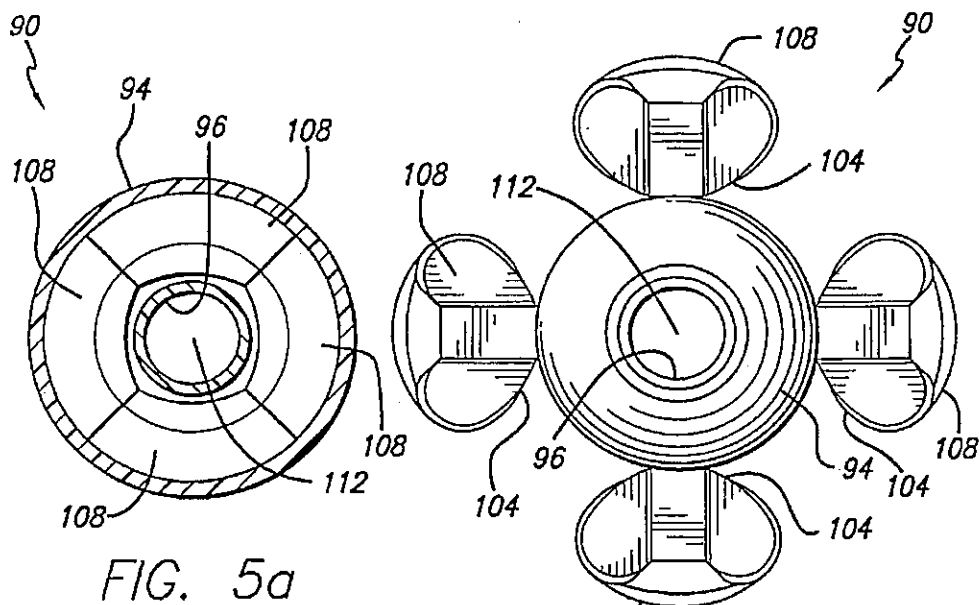
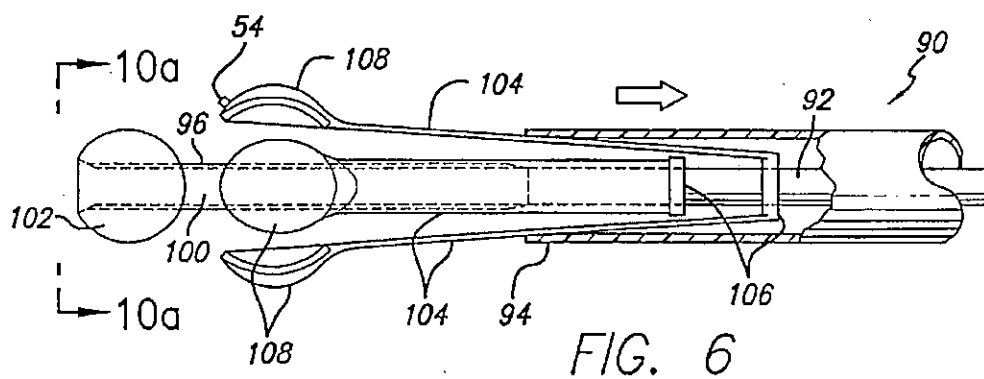
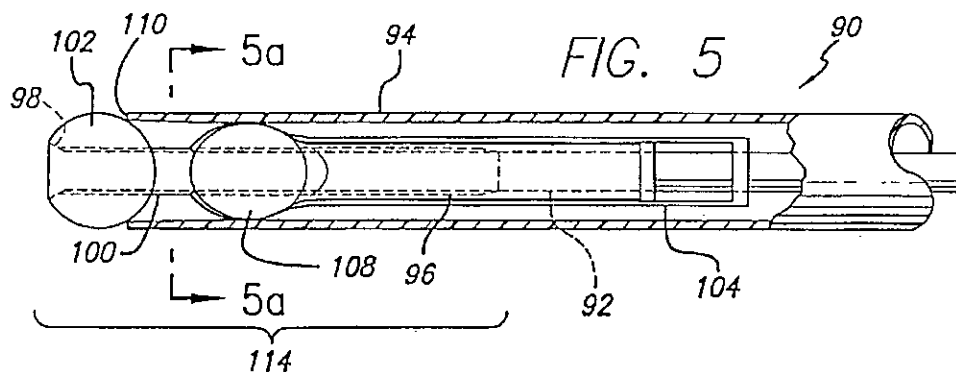




FIG. 7

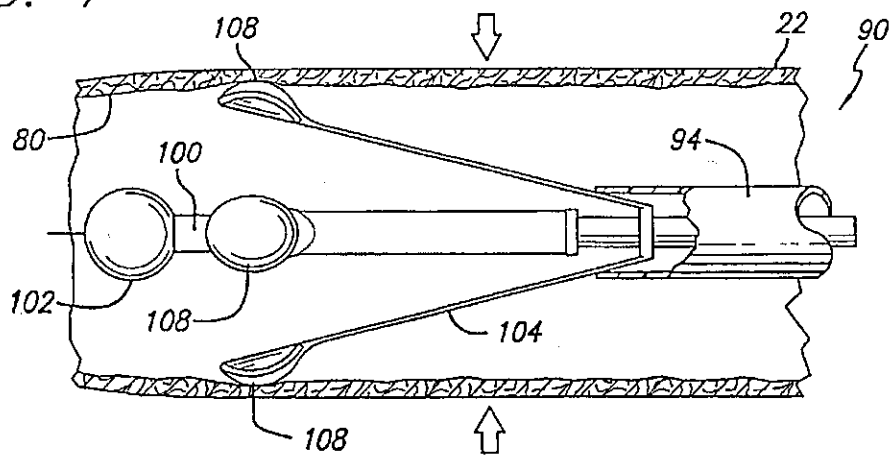


FIG. 8

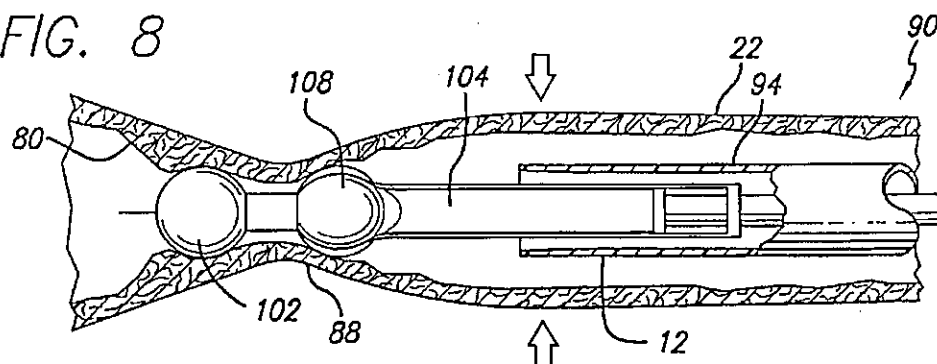
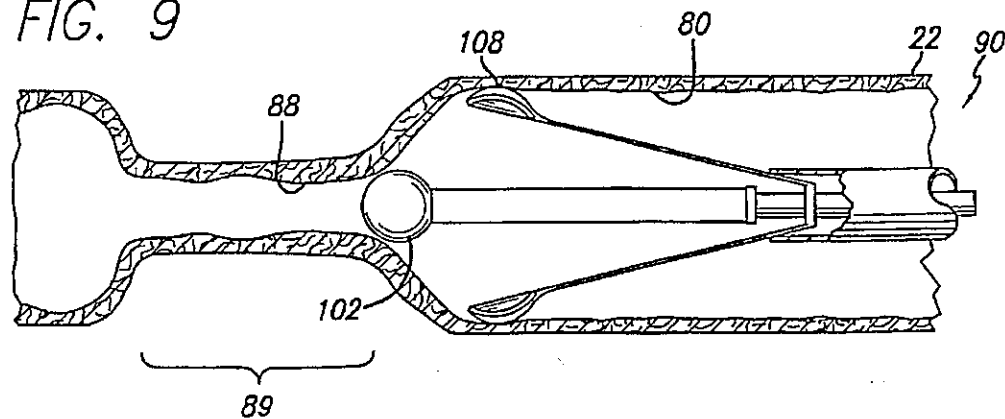


FIG. 9

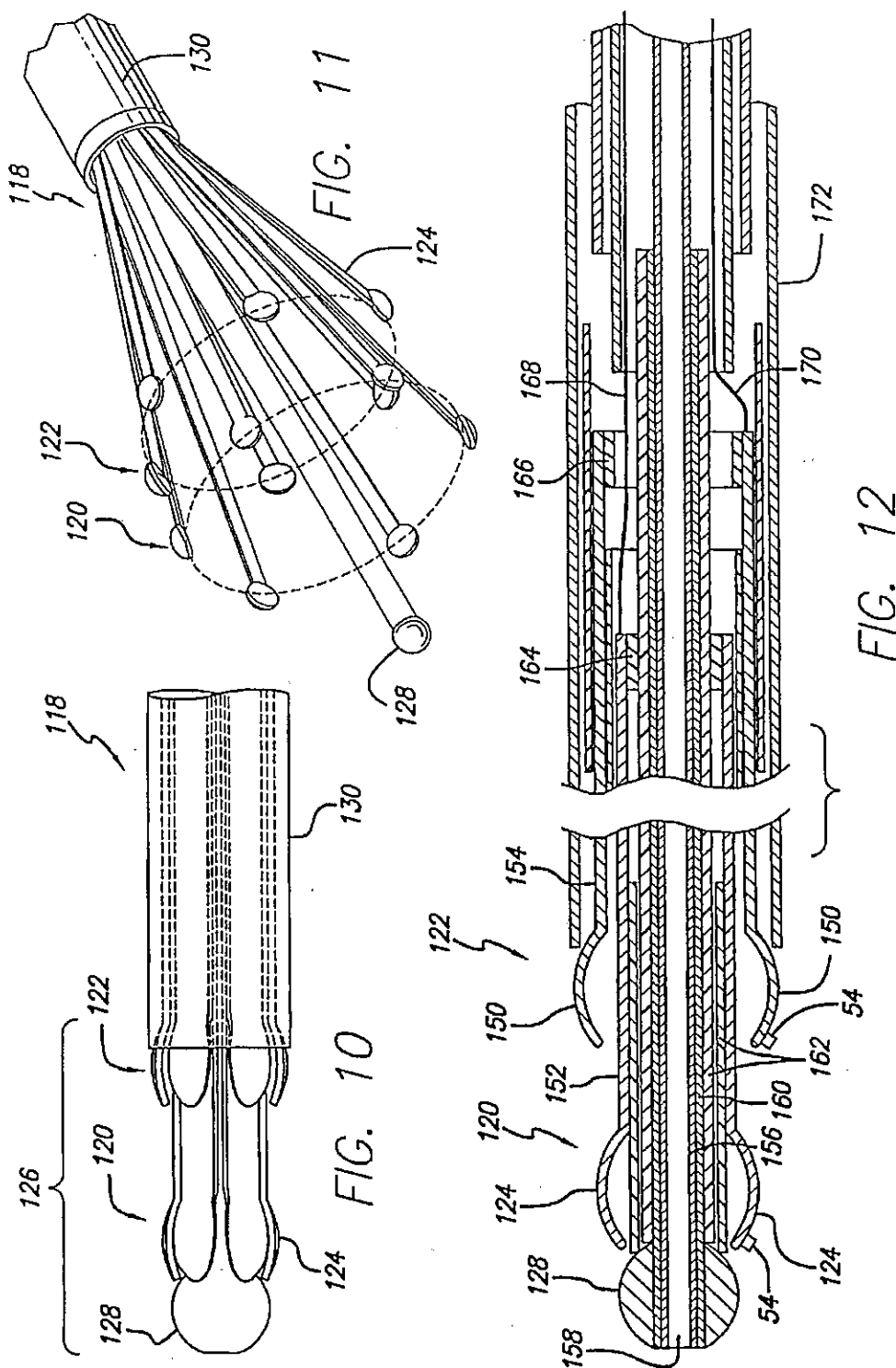


U.S. Patent

Jun. 22, 2004

Sheet 6 of 6

US 6,752,803 B2



US 6,752,803 B2

1

# METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 09/267,127 filed Mar. 10, 1999 now U.S. Pat. No. 6,258,084, which is a continuation-in-part of application Ser. No. 09/138,472, filed Aug. 21, 1998, now U.S. Pat. No. 6,179,832 which is a continuation-in-part of application Ser. No. 08/927,251 filed on Sep. 11, 1997, now U.S. Pat. No. 6,200,312.

## BACKGROUND

The invention relates generally to a method and apparatus for applying energy to shrink a hollow anatomical structure, such as a fallopian tube or a vein, including but not limited to, superficial and perforator veins, hemorrhoids, and esophageal varices. In some particular aspects, the invention relates to a method for compressing an anatomical structure prior to the application of energy and apparatus including an electrode device having multiple leads for applying energy to the compressed structure to cause it to durably assume its compressed form.

The human venous system of the lower limbs consists essentially of the superficial venous system and the deep venous system with perforating veins connecting the two systems. The superficial system includes the long or great saphenous vein and the short saphenous vein. The deep venous system includes the anterior and posterior tibial veins which unite to form the popliteal vein, which in turn becomes the femoral vein when joined by the short saphenous vein.

The venous system contains numerous one-way valves for directing blood flow back to the heart such as those valves 20 located in the vein 22 shown in FIG. 1. The arrow leading out the top of the vein represents the antegrade flow of blood back to the heart. Venous valves are usually bicuspid valves, with each cusp 24 forming a sack or reservoir 26 for blood which, under retrograde blood pressure, forces the free surfaces of the cusps together to prevent retrograde flow of the blood and allows only antegrade blood flow to the heart. Competent venous valves prevent retrograde flow as blood is pushed forward through the vein lumen and back to the heart. When an incompetent valve 28 is in the flow path, the valve is unable to close because the cusps do not form a proper seal and retrograde flow of the blood cannot be stopped. When a venous valve fails, increased strain and pressure occur within the lower venous sections and overlying tissues, sometimes leading to additional valvular failure. Incompetent valves may result from the stretching of dilated veins. As the valves fail, increased pressure is imposed on the lower veins and the lower valves of the vein, which in turn exacerbates the failure of these lower valves. A cross-sectional perspective view of a dilated vein with an incompetent valve 28 taken along lines 2—2 of FIG. 1 is illustrated in FIG. 2. The valve cusps 24 can experience some separation at the commissure due to the thinning and stretching of the vein wall at the cusps. Two venous conditions which often result from valve failure are varicose veins and more symptomatic chronic venous insufficiency.

The varicose vein condition includes dilation and tortuosity of the superficial veins of the lower limbs, resulting in unsightly discoloration, pain, swelling, and possibly ulceration. Varicose veins often involve incompetence of one or more venous valves, which allow reflux of blood within the

2

superficial system. This can also worsen deep venous reflux and perforator reflux. Current treatments of vein insufficiency include surgical procedures such as vein stripping, ligation, and occasionally, vein-segment transplant.

Chronic venous insufficiency involves an aggravated condition of varicose veins which may be caused by degenerative weakness in the vein valve segment, or by hydrodynamic forces acting on the tissues of the body, such as the legs, ankles, and feet. As the valves in the veins fail, the hydrostatic pressure increases on the next venous valves down, causing those veins to dilate. As this continues, more venous valves will eventually fail. As they fail, the effective height of the column of blood above the feet and ankles grows, and the weight and hydrostatic pressure exerted on the tissues of the ankle and foot increases. When the weight of that column reaches a critical point as a result of the valve failures, ulcerations of the ankle begin to form, which start deep and eventually come to the surface. These ulcerations do not heal easily because of poor venous circulation due to valvular incompetence in the deep venous system and other vein systems.

Other related venous conditions include dilated hemorrhoids and esophageal varices. Pressure and dilation of the hemorrhoid venous plexus may cause internal hemorrhoids to dilate and/or prolapse and be forced through the anal opening. If a hemorrhoid remains prolapsed, considerable discomfort, including itching and bleeding, may result. The venous return from these prolapsed hemorrhoids becomes obstructed by the anal sphincters, which gives rise to a strangulated hemorrhoid. Thromboses result where the blood within the prolapsed vein becomes clotted. This extremely painful condition can cause edema and inflammation.

Varicose veins called esophageal varices can form in the venous system with submucosa of the lower esophagus, and bleeding can occur from the dilated veins. Bleeding or hemorrhaging may result from esophageal varices, which can be difficult to stop and, if untreated, could develop into a life threatening condition. Such varices erode easily, and lead to a massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage.

Ligation of a fallopian tube (tubal ligation) for sterilization or other purposes is typically performed by laparoscopy. A doctor severs the fallopian tube or tubes and ties the ends. External cauterization or clamps may also be used. General or regional anesthetic must be used. All of the above are performed from outside the fallopian tube.

Hemorrhoids and esophageal varices may be alleviated by intra-luminal ligation. As used herein, "ligation" or "intra-luminal ligation" comprises the occlusion, collapse, or closure of a lumen or hollow anatomical structure by the application of energy from within the lumen or structure. As used herein, "ligation" or "intra-luminal ligation" includes electro-ligation. In the case of fallopian tube ligation, it would be desirable to perform the ligation from within the fallopian tube itself (intra-fallopian tube) to avoid the trauma associated with external methods.

Ligation involves the cauterization or coagulation of a lumen using energy, such as that applied through an electrode device. An electrode device is introduced into the lumen and positioned so that it contacts the lumen wall. Once properly positioned, RF energy is applied to the wall by the electrode device thereby causing the wall to shrink in cross-sectional diameter. In the case of a vein, a reduction in cross-sectional diameter of the vein, as for example from 5 mm (0.2 in) to 1 mm (0.04 in), significantly reduces the flow of blood through a lumen and results in an effective occlu-

US 6,752,803 B2

3

sion. Although not required for effective occlusion or ligation, the vein wall may completely collapse thereby resulting in a full-lumen obstruction that blocks the flow of blood through the vein. Likewise, a fallopian tube may collapse sufficiently to effect a sterilization of the patient.

One apparatus for performing ligation includes a tubular shaft having an electrode device attached at the distal tip. Running through the shaft, from the distal end to the proximal end, are electrical leads. At the proximal end of the shaft, the leads terminate at an electrical connector, while at the distal end of the shaft the leads are connected to the electrode device. The electrical connector provides the interface between the leads and a power source, typically an RF generator. The RF generator operates under the guidance of a control device, usually a microprocessor.

The ligation apparatus may be operated in either a monopolar or bipolar configuration. In the monopolar configuration, the electrode device consists of an electrode that is either positively or negatively charged. A return path for the current passing through the electrode is provided externally from the body, as for example by placing the patient in physical contact with a large low-impedance pad. The current flows between the ligation device and low impedance pad through the patient. In a bipolar configuration, the electrode device consists of a pair of electrodes having different potentials (such as a pair of oppositely-charged electrodes) of approximately equal size, separated from each other, such as by a dielectric material or by a spatial relationship. Accordingly, in the bipolar mode, the return path for current is provided by an electrode or electrodes of the electrode device itself. The current flows from one electrode, through the tissue, and returns by way of the another electrode.

To protect against tissue damage, i.e., charring, due to cauterization caused by overheating, a temperature sensing device is typically attached to the electrode device, although it may be located elsewhere. The temperature sensing device may be a thermocouple that monitors the temperature of the venous tissue. The thermocouple interfaces with the RF generator and the controller through the shaft and provides electrical signals to the controller which monitors the temperature and adjusts the energy applied to the tissue through the electrode device accordingly.

The overall effectiveness of a ligation apparatus is largely dependent on the electrode device contained within the apparatus. Monopolar and bipolar electrode devices that comprise solid devices having a fixed shape and size can limit the effectiveness of the ligating apparatus for several reasons. Firstly, a fixed-size electrode device typically contacts the vein wall at only one point or a limited arc on the circumference or inner diameter of the vein wall. As a result, the application of RF energy is highly concentrated within the contacting venous tissue, while the flow of RF current through the remainder of the venous tissue is disproportionately weak. Accordingly, the regions of the vein wall near the area of contact collapse at a faster rate than other regions of the vein wall, resulting in non-uniform shrinkage of the vein lumen. Furthermore, the overall strength of the occlusion may be inadequate and the lumen may eventually reopen. To avoid an inadequate occlusion, RF energy must be applied for an extended period of time so that the current flows through the tissue, including through the tissue not in contact with the electrode, generating thermal energy and causing the tissue to shrink sufficiently. Extended applications of energy have a greater possibility of increasing the temperature of the blood to an unacceptable level and may result in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum

4

forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable. Furthermore, it is possible for the undesirable coagulum to form when utilizing an expandable electrode as well. This problem can be prevented by exsanguination of the vein prior to the treatment, as well as through the use of temperature-regulated power delivery. As used herein, "exsanguination" comprises the removal of all or some significant portion of blood in a particular area.

Secondly, the effectiveness of a ligating apparatus having a fixed-size electrode device is limited to certain sized veins. An attempt to ligate a vein having a diameter that is substantially greater than the fixed-size electrode device can result in not only non-uniform heating of the vein wall as just described, but also insufficient shrinkage of the vein diameter. The greater the diameter of the vein relative to the diameter of the electrode device, the weaker the energy applied to the vein wall at points distant from the point of electrode contact. Also, larger diameter veins must shrink a larger percentage for effective occlusion to occur. Accordingly, the vein wall is likely to not completely collapse prior to the venous tissue becoming over-cauterized at the point of electrode contact. While coagulation as such may initially occlude the vein, such occlusion may only be temporary in that the coagulated blood may eventually dissolve recanalizing the vein. One solution for this inadequacy is an apparatus having interchangeable electrode devices with various diameters. Another solution is to have a set of catheters having different sizes so that one with the correct size for the diameter of the target vein will be at hand when needed. Such solutions, however, are both economically inefficient and can be tedious to use. It is desirable to use a single catheter device that is usable with a large range of sizes of lumina.

A technique of reducing the diameter of the lumen of a vein at least close to the final desired diameter before applying energy to the vein has been found to aid in the efficiency of these types of procedures. The pre-reduction in vein diameter assists in pre-shaping the vein to be molded into a ligated state. The compression also exsanguinates the vein and forces blood away from the treatment site, thus preventing coagulation. One valuable technique employed is that of compressing the vein contained within a limb by applying external hydraulic pressure, via a pressure tourniquet, to the limb. Unfortunately there are some areas of the body to which a pressure tourniquet cannot be applied, such as the sapheno-femoral junction, which is above the thigh proximate the groin area. Furthermore, there are sites where a pressure tourniquet may be ineffective such as: the popliteal junction and other areas around the knee; and the ankle area (typically the posterior arch vein and some of the lower cockett perforators).

There exists a technique referred to as tumescent anesthesia that has been used in connection with liposuction procedures. The word "tumescent" means swollen or firm. This technique is accomplished by subcutaneously delivering into target fatty tissue a large volume of saline solution containing diluted Lidocaine and Epinephrine (adrenaline), a vasoconstrictive drug. The injected area then becomes locally anesthetized, and the adrenaline temporarily constricts the capillaries and other blood vessels. The tumescence-inducing fluid, or "tumescent fluid" is injected under pressure which causes the target fatty tissue to become swollen and firm. The tumescent fluid is typically pumped into the pocket of fat in order to numb the area, loosen the fat, and constrict the blood vessels to minimize bleeding or bruising in a liposuction procedure. The anesthetic and other agents in the tumescent solution should be allowed sufficient

US 6,752,803 B2

5

time to diffuse and take full effect throughout the target tissue. After surgery, patients may leave without assistance, and often return to their regular routine within several days. With the tumescent technique, postoperative discomfort is significantly reduced. The local anesthesia often remains in the treated tissue for 16 hours after surgery. Employing a technique of utilizing tumescent anesthesia in conjunction with ligation or radial lumen shrinkage less than ligation may provide benefits.

Although described above in terms of a vein, the concepts are generally applicable to other hollow anatomical structures in the body as well. The above description has been generally confined to veins in consideration of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

Hence those skilled in the art have recognized a need for an improved method and apparatus that can be used on areas of the body to shrink and ligate hollow anatomical structures. A need has also been recognized for an improved method and apparatus to pre-compress and exsanguinate a hollow anatomical structure while providing anesthetic and insulation benefits during the radial shrinkage of the hollow anatomical structure. The invention fulfills these needs and others.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to a method and apparatus for applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure such as a vein, to shrink the structure. In a more detailed aspect, the invention is directed to pre-compressing and exsanguinating a hollow anatomical structure while providing anesthetic and insulation benefits during a procedure of shrinking the hollow anatomical structure.

In another aspect of the present invention, a method comprises providing fluid to tissue surrounding a hollow anatomical structure to induce tumescence of the tissue and consequent compression of the hollow anatomical structure during a procedure of applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure from within the structure. In a more detailed aspect, the method comprises introducing into the hollow anatomical structure a catheter having a working end and at least one electrode at the working end; placing the electrode into contact with the inner wall of the pre-compressed hollow anatomical structure and applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site via the electrode until the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the pre-compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the solution into the tissue.

In another aspect in accordance with the invention, tumescent fluid is injected in the tissue surrounding the hollow anatomical structure along a selected length of the hollow anatomical structure. The electrode is then moved along a site within the selected length while continuously applying energy to result in a lengthy occlusion. In another approach, after an initial application of energy to one site internal to the hollow anatomical structure within the selected length, the electrode is moved down a given length of the hollow anatomical structure and energy is applied at that adjacent site. For the site where energy is applied, the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the pre-compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the solution into the tissue.

In a more detailed aspect, tumescent anesthesia fluid is injected or otherwise provided to tissue contiguous with a vein to compress the vein to about a desired final diameter. A catheter having an energy application device, such as

6

expandable electrodes, is introduced internal to the vein at a site within the compressed portion of the vein and energy is applied to the internal vein wall by the application device. Sufficient energy is applied to cause the vein to durably assume the compressed diameter such that when the effects of the tumescent anesthesia fluid are dissipated, the vein retains the compressed diameter.

Alternate means to prevent coagulum formation include fluid displacement of blood at the treatment site, or exsanguination by inducing self-constriction of the vessel. In the latter, self-constriction includes, but is not limited to, intraluminal delivery of a vasoconstrictive drug. Self-constriction also aids in pre-shaping the vein for ligation, as discussed previously. If the fluid delivered to the site is a sclerosant, the ligation effects would be further enhanced.

In further aspects, energy is applied to effectively occlude the treatment site. Further, the energy application device is moved along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy so as to result in a lengthy occlusion of the treatment site. The treatment site may collapse around the energy application device as it is being moved. In yet further detail, fluid is delivered from within the hollow structure to the treatment site. This fluid may be used to exsanguinate the treatment site. Such fluid may be from the following group: saline; a vasoconstrictive agent; a sclerosing agent; a high impedance fluid; and heparin.

In another aspect, temperatures are sensed at two separate locations on the energy application device, and the temperature signals are averaged to determine the temperature at the site. In further detailed aspects, electrical energy is applied to the inner wall of the treatment site with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall. With the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall, the method further comprises the steps of applying electrical energy with the electrode to effectively occlude the treatment site at the electrode, and moving the electrode along the treatment site while maintaining the electrode in apposition with the vein wall while performing the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site so as to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site. Sufficient energy is applied to collapse the hollow anatomical structure around the energy application device as it is being moved along the treatment site to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

In yet a further aspect, apposition of the energy application device with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure is determined by monitoring the impedance experienced by the energy application device.

These and other aspects and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the following more detailed description, when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings which illustrate, by way of example, embodiments of the invention.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows a cross-sectional view of a vein having competent valves and having a dilated section with incompetent venous valves in a lower limb which are to be treated in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 2 shows a representative view of a venous section with an incompetent valve from FIG. 1 taken along lines 2—2 which is to be treated in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 3 is a cross-sectional view of the vein of FIG. 1 after the vein has been compressed, although not to full occlusion, by the injection of a tumescent anesthesia fluid in tissue



US 6,752,803 B2

7

surrounding the vein showing a catheter including an expandable electrode device prior to the application of energy to the vein;

FIG. 4 is a diagram of an energy application system that may be used in conjunction with the method of the present invention, depicting a partial cutaway view of the first embodiment of the catheter showing both the working end and the connecting end with an RF generator and a microprocessor connected at the connection end;

FIG. 5 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of an embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 5a is an end view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter taken along line 5a—5a of FIG. 5;

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter of FIGS. 5 and 5a depicting the electrodes in a fully expanded position;

FIG. 6a is an end view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter taken along line 6a—6a of FIG. 6;

FIG. 7 is a cross-sectional view of a vein after the vein has been compressed, although not to full occlusion, by tumescent anesthesia fluid, the vein containing the catheter of FIG. 5 with the electrodes in apposition with the vein;

FIG. 8 is a cross-sectional view of the compressed vein containing the catheter of FIG. 5 where the vein is being ligated by the application of energy from the electrodes;

FIG. 9 is a partial cross-sectional view of the vein wall of FIG. 8 showing a lengthy effective occlusion made by moving the electrodes along the treatment site of the vein while maintaining the electrodes in apposition and continuing to apply energy to the vein wall.

FIG. 10 is a side view of an embodiment of an electrode catheter having two pluralities of longitudinally-separated expandable electrodes in a retracted condition;

FIG. 11 is a side view of the embodiment of the electrode catheter of FIG. 10 with both pluralities of the electrodes in expanded configurations; and

FIG. 12 is a partial cross-sectional view of the embodiment of an electrode catheter of FIGS. 10 and 11.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

As shown in the exemplary drawings, the invention is directed toward the intravenous treatment of veins using a catheter to deliver at least one electrode to a venous treatment site. As used herein, like reference numerals will designate similar elements in the various embodiments of the present invention to be discussed. In addition, unless otherwise noted, the term "working end" will refer to the direction toward the treatment site in the patient, and the term "connecting end" will refer to the direction away from the treatment site in the patient. The invention will be described in relation to the treatment of the venous system of the lower limbs. It is to be understood, however, that the invention is not limited thereto and may be employed intraluminally to treat veins in other areas of the body such as hemorrhoids, esophageal varices, and venous-drainage-impotence of the penis. Furthermore, although the invention will be described as using RF energy from the electrode, it is to be understood that other forms of energy such as microwaves, ultrasound, direct current, circulating heated fluid, radiant light, and lasers can be used, and that the thermal energy generated from a resistive coil or curie point element may be used as well.

8

Turning to FIG. 3, one preferred method of the present invention can be performed using the catheter 30 to deliver an expandable electrode device 32 (partially shown) to a venous treatment site in order to ligate the vein. Instead of compressing the tissue surrounding the treatment site via a pressure tourniquet, a tumescent anesthesia technique can be used to inject a dilute anesthetic and vasoconstrictive solution into the tissue surrounding the vein to be treated. The tumescent solution preferably includes mostly saline solution, with a local anesthetic such as Lidocaine, and a vasoconstrictive drug such as Epinephrine. The tumescent solution causes the surrounding tissue 34 to become swollen which compresses the vein 22, as indicated by the arrows, close to occlusion (in this case) or to occlusion. Sufficient tumescent solution should be delivered into the tissue surrounding the vein to compress and exsanguinate the vein. Before injecting the tumescent solution, the catheter 30 is placed within the vein at the treatment site, with the expandable electrode device retracted.

The solution is typically infused with a peristaltic pump. However, 60 cc or 100 cc syringes 35 can be used. Another alternative is an IV bag with a pressure cuff. Large volumes are typically delivered into the perivenal area via a large cannula. Sites are typically located 10 cm apart down the leg. Usually there are four or five delivery sites. The external result is a leg that appears inflated. The internal result is compressed veins plus an anesthetized leg. The expandable electrode device is then expanded into apposition with the venous tissue after compression of the vein. Energy such as high frequency RF energy is applied from the expandable electrode device to the venous tissue until the vein durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the tumescent solution into the tissue.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section or treatment site, the electrode may be retracted and the catheter moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated. Ultrasound guidance can be used to monitor the progress of the procedure.

One preferred embodiment of the catheter for delivering an expandable energy application device or expandable electrode device 56 to the venous treatment site is illustrated in FIG. 4. The catheter 30 includes an expandable energy application device 56 which in this embodiment, comprises an array of electrodes 58, an outer sheath 36 having a distal orifice 38 at its working end 40. The connector end 42 of the outer sheath is attached to a handle 44 that includes electrical connector 46. The handle additionally includes a guide wire port 48. The connector 46 is for interfacing with a power source, typically an RF generator 50, and a microprocessor controller 52. The power source and microprocessor controller are usually contained in one unit. The microprocessor controller controls the RF generator in response to external commands and data from a temperature sensor 54, such as a thermocouple, or temperature sensors that may be positioned at an intraluminal venous treatment site.

The catheter 30 includes the expandable electrode device 56 that moves in and out of the outer sheath by way of the distal orifice 38 in this embodiment, although in other embodiments the device 56 may expand from and contract into the catheter 30 at other locations. The expandable electrode device 56 includes a plurality of electrodes 58 which can be expanded by moving the outer sheath 36 relative to the electrodes. Although FIG. 4 illustrates a plurality of electrodes 58 surrounding a single central electrode, different electrode configurations may be used.

Contained within the outer sheath 36 is an inner sheath 60 or inner member as shown in the cutaway portion of FIG. 4.

US 6,752,803 B2

9

A fluid port 62 communicates with the interior of the outer sheath. The catheter 30 can be periodically flushed out with saline through the fluid port. The flushing fluid can travel between the outer sheath and the inner sheath. The fluid port also allows for the delivery of drug therapies. Flushing out the catheter prevents the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter. The treatment area or site of the vein can be flushed with a fluid such as saline, or a high impedance dielectric fluid, in order to evacuate blood from the treatment area of the vein so as to prevent the formation of coagulum or thrombosis. The use of a high impedance dielectric fluid can minimize unintended heating effects away from the treatment area. The dielectric fluid directs the current of RF energy toward the vein wall. In addition, a vasoconstrictive agent may be applied to shrink the vein, heparin may be applied for coagulation avoidance, and a sclerosing agent may be applied to assist in ligation. These drugs or agents may be applied before, during, or after the catheter is used to heat the vein wall.

In one preferred embodiment, the catheter 30 includes a lumen which begins at the distal tip 55, proximate the working end 40, and runs substantially along the axis of the inner member before terminating at the guide wire port 48 of the handle 44. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen of the catheter for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. Where the catheter is sized to treat smaller veins, the outer diameter of the catheter may not allow for a fluid flush between the outer sheath and the inner sheath 60. However, a fluid flush can be introduced through the guide wire port 48 in such an embodiment.

Turning again to FIG. 4, an actuator 76 controls the extension of the electrode device 56 through the distal orifice 38. The actuator may take the form of a switch, lever 78, threaded control knob, or other suitable mechanism, and is preferably one that can provide fine control over the movement of the outer sheath 36 or the inner sheath 60, as the case may be. In one embodiment of the invention, the actuator interfaces with the outer sheath to move it back and forth relative to the inner sheath. In another embodiment the actuator interfaces with the inner sheath to move it back and forth relative to the outer sheath. The relative position between the outer sheath and inner sheath is thus controlled, but other control approaches may be used.

In a preferred embodiment of a catheter 90 is illustrated in FIG. 5. An inner member 92 or sheath is contained within the outer sheath 94. The inner sheath is preferably constructed from a flexible polymer such as polyimide, polyethylene, or nylon, and can travel the entire length of the catheter. The majority of the catheter should be flexible so as to navigate the tortuous paths of the venous system. A hypotube having a flared distal end 98 and a circular cross-sectional shape is attached over the distal end of the inner sheath 92. The hypotube 96 is preferably no more than about two to three centimeters in length. The hypotube acts as part of a conductive secondary lead 100. An uninsulated conductive electrode sphere 102 is slipped over the hypotube. The flared distal end of the hypotube prevents the electrode sphere from moving beyond the distal end of the hypotube. The sphere is permanently affixed to the hypotube, such as by soldering the sphere both front and back on the hypotube. The majority of the surface of the electrode sphere remains uninsulated. The remainder of the hypotube is preferably insulated so that the sphere-shaped distal end can act as the electrode. For example, the hypotube can be covered with an insulating material such as a coating of parylene. The interior lumen of the hypotube is lined by the inner sheath 92 which is attached to the flared distal end of the hypotube by adhesive such as epoxy.

10

Surrounding the secondary lead 100 are a plurality of primary leads 104 that preferably have a flat rectangular strip shape and can act as arms. In one configuration, the strip shape is a width from 0.76 mm (0.03 in.) to 1.00 mm (0.04 in.) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005 in.). As illustrated in FIG. 6, the plurality of primary leads 104 is preferably connected to common conductive rings 106. This configuration maintains the position of the plurality of primary leads, while reducing the number of internal electrical connections. The conductive rings 106 are attached to the inner sheath 92. The position of the rings and the primary leads relative to the outer sheath 94 follows that of the inner sheath. As earlier described, the hypotube 96 of the secondary lead is also attached to the inner sheath. Two separate conductive rings can be used so that the polarity of different primary leads can be controlled separately. For example, adjacent primary leads can be connected to one of the two separate conductive rings so that the adjacent leads can be switched to have either opposite polarities or the same polarity. The rings are preferably spaced closely together, but remain electrically isolated from each other along the inner sheath. Both the rings and the hypotube are coupled with the inner sheath, and the primary leads that are connected to the rings move together with the secondary lead while remaining electrically isolated from the secondary lead. Epoxy or another suitable adhesive can be used to attach the rings to the inner sheath. The primary leads from the respective rings alternate with each other along the circumference of the inner sheath. The insulation along the underside of the leads prevents an electrical short between the rings. FIG. 6a illustrates an end view of the working end of catheter 90 taken along line 6a—6a of FIG. 6.

The conductive rings 106 and the primary leads 104 are attached together to act as cantilevers where the ring forms the base and the rectangular primary leads operate as the cantilever arms. The primary leads are formed to have an arc or bend such that the primary leads act as arms that tend to spring outwardly away from the catheter 90 and toward the surrounding venous tissue. Insulation along the underside of the primary leads and the conductive rings prevents unintended electrical coupling therebetween. Alternately, the primary leads are formed straight and connected to the conductive rings at an angle such that the primary leads tend to expand or spring radially outward from the conductive rings. The angle at which the primary leads are attached to the conductive rings should be sufficient to force the primary distal ends and their electrodes 108 through blood and into apposition with the vein wall 80 but not enough to preclude vein shrinkage. In particular, the primary leads 104 are formed with enough strength, and are mounted or bent such that they expand outwardly into apposition with the inner wall of the vein. However, the force they develop in an outward direction is not strong enough to prevent radial shrinkage of the vein. As the vein shrinks, due to the heating caused by the energy delivered by the electrodes 108, the shrinking vein causes a contraction of the primary electrodes. Due to the outward force constantly exerted by the primary leads 104, the electrodes 108 remain in constant apposition with the vein wall as it shrinks.

Other properties of the primary leads, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead against the vein wall and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. The rectangular cross section of the primary leads can provide increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. The primary leads are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward due to the

US 6,752,803 B2

11

increased size of the rectangular lead in that sideways direction, and a uniform spacing between primary leads is more assured. Uniform spacing between the primary leads and the distal ends promotes uniform heating around the vein by the electrodes 108.

The distal ends of the primary leads 104 are uninsulated to act as the electrodes 108 having a rounded shape. In the embodiment shown, the shape is convex which may take the form of a spoon or hemispherical shape. The primary leads can be stamped to produce an integral shaped electrode at the distal end of the primary leads. The uninsulated outer portion of the distal end of the electrodes 108 which are to come into apposition with the wall of the vein is preferably rounded and convex. The flattened or non-convex inner portion of the distal end is insulated to minimize any unintended thermal effect, such as on the surrounding blood in a vein. The distal ends of the electrodes 108 are configured such that when the distal ends are forced toward the inner sheath 92, as shown in FIG. 5a, the distal ends combine to form a substantially spherical shape with a profile smaller than the spherical electrode 102 at the secondary distal end.

In one preferred embodiment as shown in FIG. 6, the electrodes 108 comprise a convex, square center section with semi-circular ends. It has been found that this "race track" configuration maximizes surface area of contact for the electrodes 108 shown.

The outer sheath 94 can slide over and surround the primary and secondary leads 100 and 104. The outer sheath includes an orifice 110 which is dimensioned to have approximately the same size as the spherical electrode 102 at the secondary distal end. A close or snug fit between the spherical electrode 102 and the orifice 110 of the outer sheath is achieved. This configuration provides an atraumatic tip for the catheter 90. The spherical electrode 102 is preferably slightly larger than the orifice 110. The inner diameter of the outer sheath is approximately the same as the diameter of the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 108.

A fluid port (not shown) can communicate with the interior of the outer sheath 94 so that fluid can be flushed between the outer sheath and inner sheath 92 as described above. Alternately, a fluid port can communicate with a central lumen 112 in the hypotube which can also accept a guide wire for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. It is to be understood that another lumen can be formed in the catheter to deliver fluid to the treatment site. The delivered fluid displaces or exsanguinates blood from the vein so as to avoid heating and coagulation of blood. The delivery of a dielectric fluid increases the surrounding impedance so that RF energy is directed into the tissue of the vein wall. An alternate fluid could be a sclerosing agent which could serve to displace blood or to further enhance occlusion of the vein when applied before, during, or after energy delivery. The fluid can also include an anticoagulant such as heparin which can chemically discourage the coagulation of blood at the treatment site. The catheter 90 can be periodically flushed with saline which can prevent the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter. The saline can be flushed through the central lumen 112 or between the inner and outer sheaths. If a central lumen is not desired, the lumen of the hypotube can be filled with solder.

The electrode device 114 can operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads have opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation is

12

available. When the primary leads are commonly charged a monopolar electrode operation is available in combination with a large return electrode pad placed in contact with the patient. When the primary electrodes 108 are commonly charged or have a first potential, and a secondary electrode 102 has an opposite polarity or different potential, a bipolar electrode operation is available. More or fewer leads may be used. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the vein to be treated, as described above.

Although not shown, it is to be understood that the catheter 90 can include one or more temperature sensors, such as thermocouples, mounted in place on an electrode 108 so that the sensor is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 108. (The sensor is shown in a raised position in the drawings for clarity of illustration only). The temperature sensor senses the temperature of the portion of the vein that is in apposition with the exposed electrode 108 surface. The sensor provides an indication of when shrinkage occurs (70 degrees C. or higher). Application of RF energy from the electrodes 108 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, such as the temperature at which venous tissue begins to cauterize. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein 22 is detected. This also helps to forestall overheating of the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 7 and 8, in the operation of this embodiment of a catheter 90, the catheter is inserted into a vein 22. Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or another technique may be used to direct and confirm the specific placement of the catheter in the vein. Impedance measurements can also be used to determine proper positioning of the catheter, particularly at the ostium of a vessel such as at the sapheno-femoral junction. The impedance will be low when the electrodes are in the blood stream. The catheter can then be moved until a high impedance value is obtained, indicating electrode contact with the vein wall. The vein wall 80 has been compressed by the introduction of tumescent anesthesia into the tissue surrounding the vein as indicated by the arrows. The arrows in the figures indicate the compression of the tissue. Unless stated otherwise, all drawing figures having arrows indicating tissue compression are not drawn to scale for purposes of clarity of illustration and are meant to be representations of the vein in a nearly fully occluded state.

The reduction in the vein 22 diameter caused by the tumescence of the tissue in contact with the treatment site assists in pre-shaping the vein to be molded to a ligated state. The compression also exsanguinates the vein and forces blood away from the treatment site, thus preventing coagulation.

The actuator 76 (FIG. 4) is then operated to retract the outer sheath 94 to expose leads the 100 and 104. As the outer sheath no longer restrains the leads, the primary leads 104 move outward relative to the axis defined by the outer sheath, while the secondary lead 100 remains substantially linear along the axis defined by the outer sheath. The primary leads continue to move outward until their electrodes 108 are placed in apposition with the vein wall 80 and the outward movement of the primary leads is impeded. The primary electrodes 108 contact the vein wall along a generally circumferential area or band of the vein wall. This outward movement of the primary leads occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion so that the primary electrodes



US 6,752,803 B2

13

108 are substantially evenly spaced. Alternately, the electrodes 86 can be spaced apart in a staggered fashion such that they do not lie in the same plane. For example, the adjacent electrodes 86 can extend different lengths from the catheter so that a smaller cross-sectional profile is achieved when the electrodes 86 are collapsed toward one another.

When the electrodes 102 and 108 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the RF generator 50 is activated to provide suitable RF energy. One suitable frequency is 510 kHz. One criterion used in selecting the frequency of the energy to be applied is the control desired over the spread, including the depth, of the thermal effect in the venous tissue. Another criterion is compatibility with filter circuits for eliminating RF noise from thermocouple signals. In a bipolar operation, the primary electrodes 108 are charged with one polarity opposite that of the secondary electrode 102. The coupling between oppositely charged primary and secondary electrodes produces RF fields therebetween, and form a symmetrical RF field pattern along a circumferential band of the vein wall 80 to achieve a uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy produces a thermal effect which causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein 22. The thermal effect produces structural transfiguration of the collagen fibrils in the vein. The collagen fibrils shorten and thicken in cross-section in response to the heat from the thermal effect. As shown in FIG. 8, the energy causes the vein wall 88 to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the primary lead electrodes 108. The primary lead electrodes are pressed closer together by the shrinking vein wall and assume a reduced profile shape which is sufficiently small so that the vein is effectively ligated.

The catheter 90 is pulled back while continuing energy delivery as shown in FIG. 9. Ligation as the catheter is being retracted produces a lengthy occlusion 89 which is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization than an acute point occlusion.

In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 102 remains neutral, while the primary electrodes 108 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form RF fields substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein. The thermal effect produced by those RF fields along the axial length of the vein wall 80 causes the vein wall to collapse around the primary lead electrodes. The electrode device is retracted as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall, as previously described. The electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters apart along the circumference of the vein wall 80, which defines the target vein diameter for a designed electrode catheter. Where the electrodes are substantially evenly spaced in a substantially symmetrical arrangement, and the spacing between the electrodes is maintained, a symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion.

Although not shown, in another embodiment, the primary leads may be mounted or otherwise configured such that they expand outwardly in an asymmetrical fashion. One purpose for an asymmetrical electrode arrangement is to only shrink a portion of the vein wall to achieve occlusion. Such may be desired in the case of preferentially shrinking a tributary branch or aneurysm on one side of the vein.

14

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section or treatment site, the actuator 76 causes the primary leads 104 to return to the interior of the outer sheath 94. Once the primary leads are within the outer sheath, the catheter 90 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated.

As illustrated in FIGS. 10 and 11, another embodiment of an expandable electrode catheter 118 includes two sets of expandable electrode leads 120 and 122, although additional sets of electrode leads may be possible. The electrodes 124 of this embodiment are similar to the electrodes of the embodiment illustrated in FIG. 6 having electrodes with a rounded, convex, spoon-shaped contact area. Other shapes for the electrode may be used, such as ellipses, rounded, ovals, race tracks, and others. Although only one electrode is indicated by numeral 124 in FIGS. 10 and 11, this is for purposes of clarity in the drawings only. All electrodes are meant to be indicated by numeral 124. While each set of electrode leads may include as few as two electrode leads, the illustrated embodiment includes six electrode leads per set, although more than six electrode leads may be used as well.

In the embodiment shown in FIGS. 10 and 11, the sets of electrode leads 120 and 122 are longitudinally separated from each other. Thus, the electrodes within each set of electrode leads are separated from one another radially and each of those electrodes is also separated from every electrode in the other set longitudinally, due to the longitudinal separation. There therefore exists radial separation and longitudinal separation of electrodes at the working end 126 of the catheter 118 in the arrangement shown in FIGS. 10 and 11.

With the configuration of electrode leads presented in FIGS. 10 and 11, greater flexibility exists in establishing current flows through the tissue of a patient. As in previous embodiments, the electrodes expand outwardly into contact with patient tissue. Where all the electrodes of a first set of electrode leads have the same polarity, there may be an odd number of electrodes in the set, or an even number. All electrodes in the set may be connected to a common connection point, such as the conducting ring 106 shown in FIG. 6. A single conductor from the connecting end of the catheter may power all electrodes of the set by a single connection to that conducting ring. All electrodes of a second set of electrode leads may also be commonly connected at a respective conducting ring but to a different electrical potential than the first set. Because two different electrical potentials exist at the working end of the catheter, energy will flow through the patient tissue between those sets of electrode leads and a bipolar arrangement will exist. Thus, a length of patient tissue, at least as long as the distance between the first and second sets of electrode leads, will receive the energy.

A monopolar arrangement may also be established if desired by setting all electrodes of all electrode leads to the same electrical potential and establishing a different electrical potential outside the patient, such as at a "backplate" in contact with the skin of the patient at a selected location. Energy from the working end 126 of the catheter will then flow through the patient to the return provided by the backplate.

In another arrangement in polarizing or controlling the electrical potential at the electrodes, the electrodes in the first set of electrode leads may be individually controlled so that there are electrode pairs of differing potentials in the set of leads. This would establish a bipolar approach within the

US 6,752,803 B2

15

first set of leads itself. If the electrodes of the second set of leads are likewise connected for different potentials among themselves, they too would provide a bipolar approach in their own set and currents would flow through patient tissue between the electrodes in each set of leads. If the electrodes having a first polarity in the first set are aligned with the electrodes having a different polarity in the second set of leads, energy would not only flow between the bipolar electrodes within the set but would also flow to the electrodes in the other set resulting in two bipolar arrangements at the single working end of the catheter. Patient tissue of a length at least as great as the distance between the first and second sets of electrode leads will receive energy as well as patient tissue between electrodes within each set of leads itself.

A further arrangement coupled with the bipolar approach just described would be to also use a backplate at a different electrical potential to provide further control over the energy flow through the patient's tissue. In this case, energy would flow between the electrodes within each set of leads, between electrodes in different sets of leads, and between electrodes and the backplate.

In yet a further arrangement, each of the electrodes may be individually connected to a power source (50, FIG. 4) and the electrical potential at each electrode can be individually controlled. This arrangement may yield even more precise control over the current densities through patient tissue. As an example, where less current flow is desired between certain electrodes of a set of leads but more current flow is desired between those electrodes and electrodes of a second set of leads, the potential between the electrodes of the same set may be reduced but the potential between those electrodes and the electrodes of the second set of leads may be increased resulting in the desired current flow densities. In the case where a backplate is also used, the electrodes may be controlled so that energy flows between such electrodes and the backplate. Because each electrode is individually controlled, the level of energy it imparts to the tissue at its location is controllable.

One factor that could affect the number of electrodes per set of electrode leads is the diameter of the vein being treated. The design of the contact pad for the electrode leads could also affect the desired number of electrodes for a given procedure.

In this embodiment, the electrode leads 120, 122 are formed to expand outwardly into apposition with the target tissue, yet as the target tissue shrinks, the electrodes maintain contact with that tissue and are moved inwardly by that tissue. Because of this arrangement, the leads compensate for variations in the diameter of the vein. They are therefore capable of maintaining apposition with the tissue whether or not compression of the vein or anatomical structure exists, such as by use of a pressure cuff or tourniquet or tumescence of the surrounding tissue.

The tip 128 of the electrode catheter 118 should have a hemispherical or another atraumatic shape. The tip 128 may be electrically neutral, and may be fabricated from a polymer or it may be fabricated of stainless steel. Because the tip 128 has a rounded shape and is located at the distal extreme of the catheter, it may perform a guiding function when introducing the catheter to the patient.

The double set of expandable electrodes can be used to ligate veins or other hollow anatomical structures in a manner similar to that previously described. The outer sheath 130 can be pulled back to allow the electrode to expand outwardly from the catheter and into apposition with

16

the wall of the lumen being treated. The two sets of electrodes 120 and 122 apply energy to the lumen to cause it to shrink to a reduced diameter. The catheter can be moved or pulled back while the energy is being applied to treat an extended area of the lumen. When the desired area of the lumen or vein is treated (e.g., ligated) energy is no longer provided to the electrodes, and the outer sheath 130 is pushed forward to force the expanded electrodes back to an unexpanded condition. The catheter can then be removed from the patient, or another section of the vein can be treated.

The description of the component parts discussed above are for a catheter to be used in a vein ranging in size from 3 mm (0.12 in) to 10 mm (0.39 in) in diameter. It is to be understood that these dimensions do not limit the scope of the invention and are merely exemplary in nature. The dimensions of the component parts may be changed to configure a catheter that may be used in various-sized veins or other anatomical structures.

Referring now to FIG. 12, there is shown a partial cross-section view of the catheter of FIGS. 10 and 11. Two pluralities of electrodes 120 and 122 are shown with the electrodes of the first plurality 120 being indicated by numeral 124 and the electrodes of the second plurality 122 being indicated by numeral 150. Each electrode is formed from an electrically-conductive electrode lead 152 and 154 respectively that is electrically insulated along its length except at its distal end at which point no insulation exists thus forming the electrode. Each lead has an outward bend (not shown). An inner tube 156 includes a lumen 158 through which fluid may flow for flush or other purposes, or through which a guide wire may be positioned. A hypotube 160 is positioned over the inner tube and layers of insulation 162 are mounted over the hypotube. The first plurality 120 of electrode leads 152 extend proximally to a first mounting ring 164 to which all are connected. The second plurality 122 of electrode leads 154 extend proximally to a second mounting ring 166 to which all are connected. The rings 164 and 166 are mounted over the hypotube insulation so that no electrical conduction path exists between the two. Wire conductors 168 and 170 extend from the proximal end of the catheter to each ring so that all electrode leads connected to a particular ring are interconnected electrically.

Alternate arrangements are possible and in one, alternating electrodes of a particular plurality are connected to two different rings. Each ring is separately connected to the power source and the polarities of the rings may therefore be made different to establish a bipolar approach within the plurality. One electrode may be a "+" polarity while the two adjacent electrodes may be a "-" polarity. In this case then, there would be a total of three rings for all electrodes. In another arrangement, both pluralities would have two rings for its respective electrodes with alternating electrodes connected to different rings so that bipolar approaches within each plurality may be established. In this case, there would exist a total of four rings for the two pluralities of electrodes.

An outer movable sheath 172 when slid in the distal direction to the point shown in FIG. 12 will cause the electrode leads to contract to the position shown. When slid in the proximal direction a sufficient distance, the sheath 172 acts as a deployment device in that it will move past the bend (not shown) in each of the electrode leads of the second plurality 122 permitting all electrode leads to expand outwardly as shown in FIG. 11.

The electrode leads are formed of stainless steel in this embodiment and with the thin insulation layer and the

US 6,752,803 B2

17

outward bend, have enough strength to automatically move outwardly through blood flow (in a venous application) and into apposition with the inner wall of the target tissue. As the inner wall shrinks due to the application of heat by the electrodes, the inner wall will force the electrode leads toward their contracted position but the electrodes will automatically stay in apposition with the inner wall during the entire ligation process due to their outward bends and the material of which they are formed.

In one embodiment shown in FIG. 12, the electrode 124 includes a temperature sensor 54 and an electrode of the second plurality also includes a temperature sensor 54. Although not shown as such, they are mounted flush with the outer electrode surfaces and their wires protrude inwardly through the electrode and are held in place along the respective leads 152 and 154. In one embodiment, the microprocessor 52 (FIG. 4) receives the signals from both temperature sensors, averages those signals and determines the effective temperature at the treatment site based on that average signal. Methods of averaging temperature signals are well known to those skilled in the art and no further description is provided here.

Although described above as positively charged, negatively charged, or as a positive conductor or negative conductor, these terms are used for purposes of illustration only. These terms are generally meant to refer to different electrode potentials and are not meant to indicate that any particular voltage is positive or negative. Furthermore, other types of energy such as light energy from fiber optics can be used to create a thermal effect in the hollow anatomical structure undergoing treatment. Additionally, although the electrodes and leads have been described as protruding from a distal orifice in the catheter, they may be expanded by other means and in other configurations. In another embodiment, the leads may be deployed by an inner pull wire, hydraulics, or magnetic fields.

The benefits of tumescence would include locally anesthetizing the treatment area for a prolonged period of time and insulating most of the surrounding tissue and nerves from the damage of heat conducting from the treated vein. An additional benefit of the vasoconstriction induced by the Epinephrine would be that the constricted blood vessels would limit how fast the body absorbed the Lidocaine thus keeping the level of Lidocaine absorbed below the toxicity level. Also, as mentioned supra, extended applications of energy have a greater possibility of increasing the temperature of the blood to an unacceptable level and may result in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable. Using a tumescent anesthesia compression technique, including the administration of vasoconstrictive drugs, would aid in preventing this problem by exsanguinating the vein.

Although described above in terms of a vein, the concepts are generally applicable to other hollow anatomical structures in the body as well. The above description has been generally confined to veins in consideration of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

While several particular forms of the invention have been illustrated and described, it will be apparent that various modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Accordingly, it is not intended that the invention be limited, except as by the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure comprising the steps of:

18

introducing a catheter having a working end into the hollow anatomical structure;

positioning the working end of the catheter at a treatment site within the hollow anatomical structure;

administering a fluid into the tissue near the treatment site to cause swelling and compress the hollow anatomical structure to a reduced size around the catheter; and

applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site from the working end of the catheter such that the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes a reduced size to effectively occlude the hollow anatomical structure.

2. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of moving the working end of the catheter along the hollow anatomical structure during the step of applying energy.

3. The method of claim 1 further comprising the steps of: ceasing the step of applying energy;

moving the working end of the catheter to a new treatment site along the hollow anatomical structure;

applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the new treatment site from the working end of the catheter.

4. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

5. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying microwave energy.

7. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

8. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

9. The method of claim 1 wherein the fluid thermally insulates the tissue near the treatment site.

10. The method of claim 1 wherein the fluid thermally insulates nerve tissue near the treatment site.

11. The method of claim 1 wherein the fluid limits thermal damage to the tissue near the treatment site during the step of applying energy.

12. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end with an energy application device at the working end into the hollow anatomical structure;

positioning the working end of the catheter at the treatment site within the hollow anatomical structure;

administering a fluid into the tissue near the treatment site to cause swelling and compress the hollow anatomical structure to a reduced size around the catheter; and

applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site via the energy application device such that the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes a reduced size to effectively occlude the hollow anatomical structure, wherein the fluid limits the thermal effect on the tissue near the treatment site from heat generated during the step of applying energy.

13. The method of claim 12 wherein the tissue near the treatment site includes nerves.

14. The method of claim 12 further comprising the step of moving the energy application device along the hollow anatomical structure during the step of applying energy.

US 6,752,803 B2

19

15. The method of claim 12 further comprising the steps of:

ceasing the step of applying energy;

moving the energy application device to a new treatment site along the hollow anatomical structure;

applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the new treatment site via the energy application device.

16. The method of claim 12 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy circumferentially from within the hollow anatomical structure.

20

17. The method of claim 12 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

18. The method of claim 12 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying microwave energy.

19. The method of claim 12 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

20. The method of claim 12 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

\* \* \* \* \*

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
**CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION**

PATENT NO. : 6,752,803 B2  
DATED : June 22, 2004  
INVENTOR(S) : Michael P. Goldman et al.

Page 1 of 1


It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Title page.

Item [56], **References Cited**, FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS, delete "0 189 327"  
and insert in its place -- 0 189 329 --

Signed and Sealed this

Twenty-sixth Day of July, 2005

A handwritten signature in black ink, reading "Jon W. Dudas", is written over a rectangular area of fine grey dots.

JON W. DUDAS  
*Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office*

# **EXHIBIT 2**



US006769433B2

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Zikorus et al.**

(10) Patent No.: **US 6,769,433 B2**

(45) Date of Patent: **Aug. 3, 2004**

(54) **EXPANDABLE VEIN LIGATOR CATHETER HAVING MULTIPLE ELECTRODE LEADS, AND METHOD**

#### FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0 189 329 A2 7/1986  
EP 0 629 382 A1 12/1994

(List continued on next page.)

#### OTHER PUBLICATIONS

*Electrofulguration of Varicose Veins*, The Medical Letter On Drugs and Therapeutics, Jul. 12, 1968, at 53-55.

(List continued on next page.)

(75) Inventors: **Arthur W. Zikorus**, San Jose, CA (US); **Mark P. Parker**, San Jose, CA (US); **Christopher S. Jones**, Sunnyvale, CA (US); **Douglas M. Petty**, Pleasanton, CA (US); **Brian E. Farley**, Los Altos, CA (US); **Joseph M. Tartaglia**, Morgan Hill, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.**, San Jose, CA (US)

(\*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

Primary Examiner—Rosiland K. Rollins

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Fulwider Patton Lee & Utecht, LLP

#### (57) ABSTRACT

A catheter includes a plurality of primary leads to deliver energy for ligating a hollow anatomical structure. Each of the primary leads includes an electrode located at the working end of the catheter. Separation is maintained between the primary leads such that each primary lead can individually receive power of selected polarity. The primary leads are constructed to expand outwardly to place the electrodes into apposition with an anatomical structure. High frequency energy can be applied from the leads to create a heating effect in the surrounding tissue of the anatomical structure. The diameter of the hollow anatomical structure is reduced by the heating effect, and the electrodes of the primary leads are moved closer to one another. Where the hollow anatomical structure is a vein, energy is applied until the diameter of the vein is reduced to the point where the vein is occluded. In one embodiment, a secondary lead is surrounded by the primary leads, and extends beyond the primary leads. The secondary lead includes an electrode at the working end of the catheter. The secondary lead can have a polarity opposite to the polarity of the primary leads in a bipolar configuration. The polarity of the leads can be switched and the catheter can be moved during treatment to ligate an extended length of the vein. The catheter can include a lumen to accommodate a guide wire or to allow fluid delivery.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/866,517**

(22) Filed: **May 25, 2001**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2002/0007181 A1 Jan. 17, 2002

#### Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Continuation of application No. 09/267,756, filed on Mar. 10, 1999, now Pat. No. 6,237,606, which is a division of application No. 08/927,251, filed on Sep. 11, 1997, now Pat. No. 6,200,312.

(51) Int. Cl.<sup>7</sup> ..... **A61F 5/56**

(52) U.S. Cl. .... **128/898; 606/41**

(58) Field of Search ..... **606/27-29, 31, 606/32, 34, 41, 42; 607/46, 98, 100-102, 104-106; 128/898**

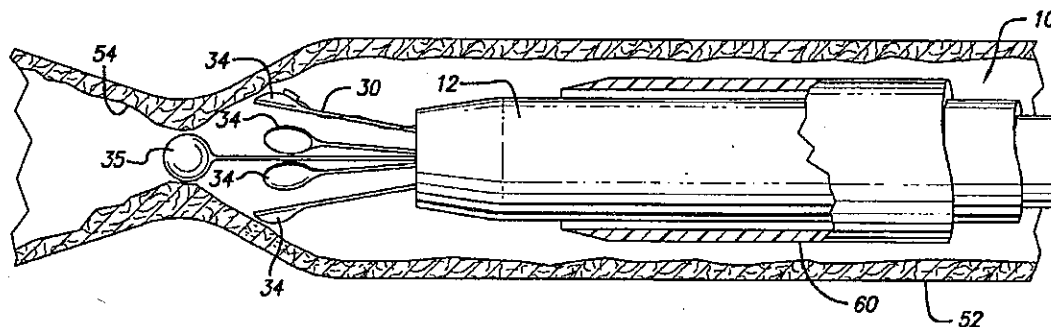
(56) **References Cited**

#### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

373,399 A 11/1887 Hamilton  
659,409 A 10/1900 Mosher  
833,759 A 10/1906 Sourwine  
985,865 A 3/1911 Turner, Jr.

(List continued on next page.)

**64 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets**





## US 6,769,433 B2

Page 2

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,230,957 A	1/1966	Siefert	
3,301,258 A	1/1967	Werner et al.	
3,557,794 A	1/1971	Van Patten	
3,920,021 A	11/1975	Hillebrandt	
4,016,886 A	4/1977	Doss et al.	
4,043,338 A	8/1977	Homm	
4,119,102 A	10/1978	LeVeen	
4,154,246 A	5/1979	LeVeen	
4,312,364 A	1/1982	Convert	
4,346,715 A	8/1982	Gammell	
4,522,205 A	6/1985	Taylor et al.	
4,643,186 A	2/1987	Rosen et al.	
4,660,571 A	4/1987	Hess et al.	
4,664,120 A	5/1987	Hess	
4,699,147 A	10/1987	Chilson et al.	
4,709,698 A	12/1987	Johnston et al.	
4,765,331 A	8/1988	Petruzzi et al.	
4,776,349 A	10/1988	Nashef et al.	
4,807,620 A	2/1989	Strul et al.	
4,823,812 A	4/1989	Eshel et al.	
4,945,912 A	8/1990	Langberg	
4,966,597 A	10/1990	Cosman	
4,976,711 A	12/1990	Parins et al.	
5,010,894 A	4/1991	Edhag	
5,057,107 A	10/1991	Parins et al.	
5,078,717 A	1/1992	Parins et al.	
5,117,828 A	6/1992	Metzger et al.	
5,122,137 A	6/1992	Lennox	
5,155,602 A	10/1992	Nichols	
5,156,151 A	10/1992	Iman	
5,215,103 A	6/1993	Desai	
5,255,678 A	10/1993	Deslauriers et al.	
5,263,493 A	11/1993	Avitall	
5,275,610 A	1/1994	Eberbach	
5,282,845 A	2/1994	Bush	
5,293,869 A	3/1994	Edwards et al.	
5,383,917 A	1/1995	Desai et al.	
5,397,339 A	3/1995	Desai et al.	
5,405,322 A	4/1995	Lennox et al.	
5,409,000 A	4/1995	Imran	
5,411,025 A	5/1995	Webster, Jr.	
5,423,815 A	6/1995	Fugo	
5,437,664 A	8/1995	Cohen et al.	
5,449,381 A	9/1995	Imran	
5,458,596 A	10/1995	Lax et al.	
5,465,717 A	11/1995	Imran et al.	
5,472,441 A	12/1995	Edwards et al.	
5,505,730 A	4/1996	Edwards	
5,514,130 A	5/1996	Baker	
5,545,161 A	8/1996	Imran	
5,556,396 A	* 9/1996	Cohen et al.	606/42
5,709,224 A	* 1/1998	Behl et al.	128/898
5,810,804 A	9/1998	Gough et al.	
5,817,092 A	10/1998	Behl	
5,827,268 A	10/1998	Laufer et al.	
5,863,290 A	1/1999	Gough et al.	

5,868,740 A	2/1999	LeVeen et al.	
6,036,687 A	* 3/2000	Laufer et al.	606/27
6,401,719 B1	* 6/2002	Farley et al.	128/898

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 738 501 A1	10/1996
WO	WO/9212681	8/1992
WO	WO/93/21846	11/1993
WO	WO/9407446	4/1994
WO	WO/9421170	9/1994
WO	WO/9510236	4/1995
WO	WO/9510322	4/1995
WO	WO/9531142	11/1995
WO	WO/9632885	10/1996
WO	WO/9706739	2/1997
WO	WO/9717892	5/1997
WO	98/55072	12/1998

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Watts, *Endovenous Diathermy Destruction Of Internal Saphenous*, British Medical Journal, Oct. 7, 1972.

O'Reilly, *Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis as Unit of the Armamentarium for the Attack on Varicose Veins*, The Medical Journal of Australia, Jun. 1, 1974 at 900.

O'Reilly, *Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins*, The Australian New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 47, No. 3, Jun. 1997, pp. 393-395.

Brunelle, et al., *A Bipolar Electrode for Vascular Electrocoagulation with Alternating Current*, Technical Notes, Oct. 1980 at 239-40.

O'Reilly, *A Technical of Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins*, The Australian New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 51, No. 4, Aug. 1981, pp. 379-382.

Cragg, et al. *Endovenous Diathermic Vessel Occlusion*, Diagnostic Radiology, 144:303-308 Jul. 1982.

Ogawa, et al., *Electrothrombosis as a Treatment of Cirroid Angioma in the Face and Scalp and Varicosis of the Leg*, Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, Sep. 1982, vol. 3, at 310-318.

Gradman, *Venoscopic Obliteration of Variceal Tributaries Using Monopolar Electrocautery*, Journal of Dermatology Surgery Oncology, 1994, 20, p. 482-485.

Inturri, *Pathophysiology of Portal Hypertension*, Journal of Vascular Technology 19 (5-6):271-276, Sep.-Dec. 1995.

Money, *Endovascular Electroablation of Peripheral Veins*, 22<sup>nd</sup> Annual Symposium, Current Critical Problems, New Horizons and Techniques in Vascular and Endovascular Surgery (Nov. 1995).

Crockett, et al. *Preliminary Experience with an Endovascular Catheter for Electrocoagulation of Peripheral Veins*, Journal of Vascular Technology, Winter 1996, at 19-22.

\* cited by examiner



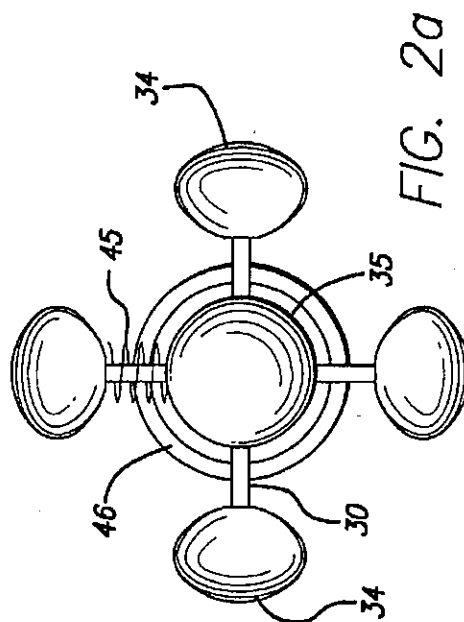
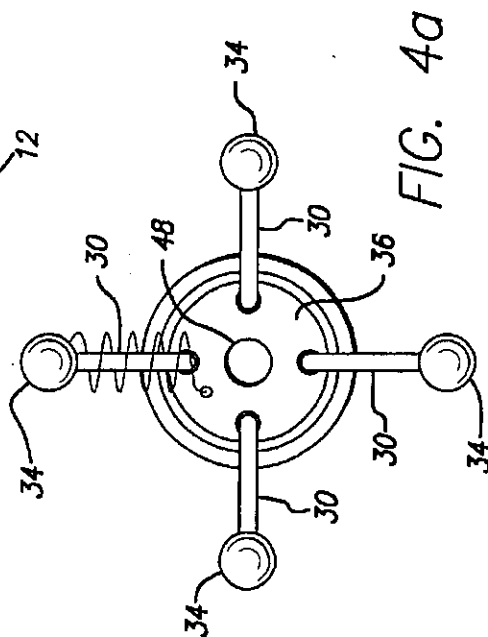
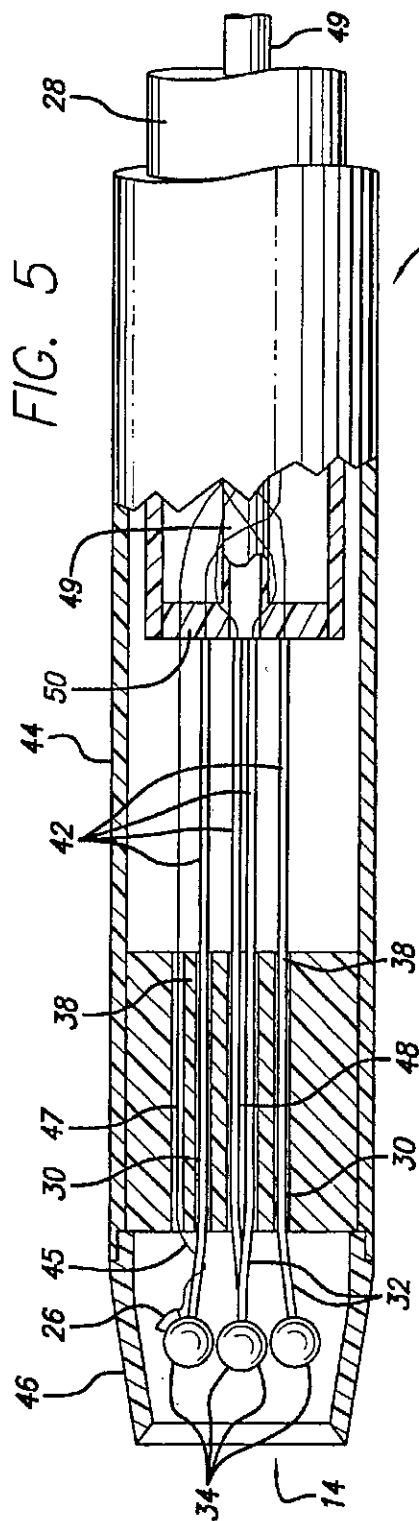


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 2 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

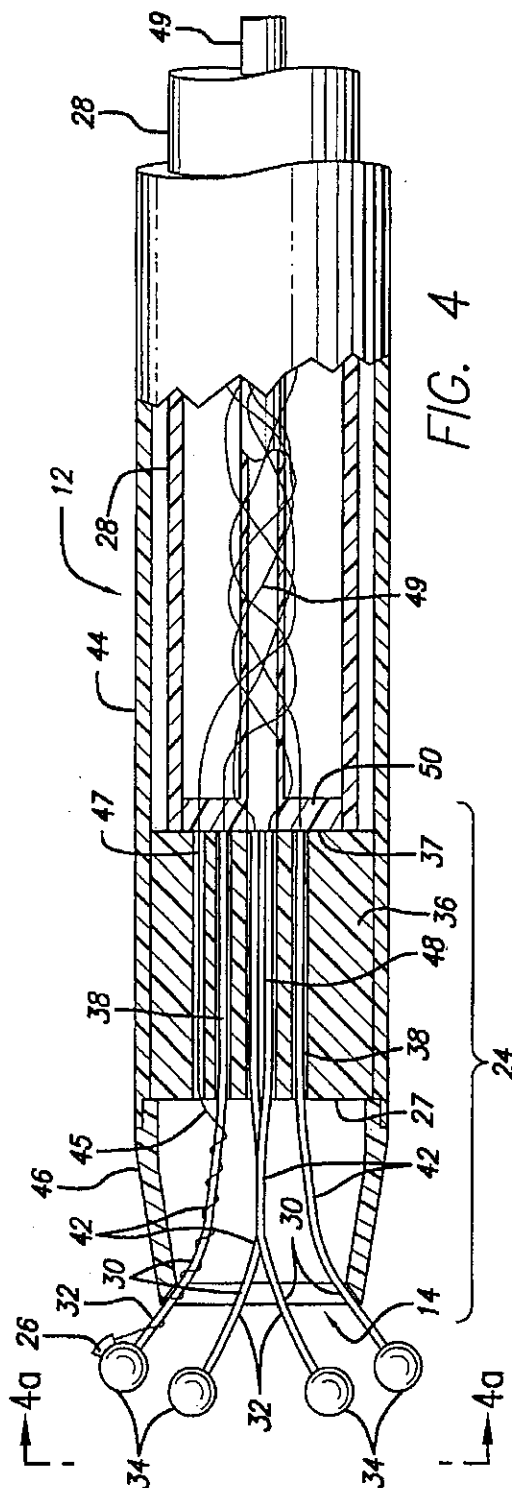
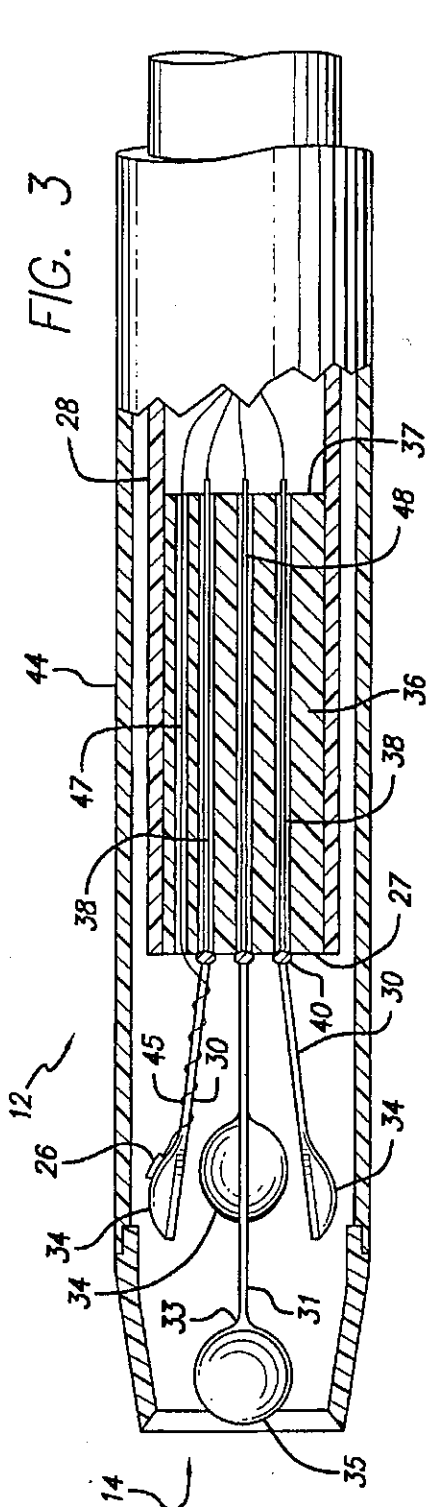


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 3 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

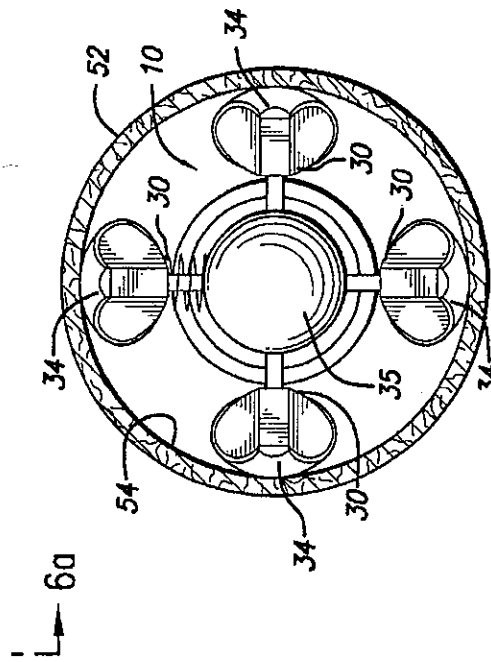
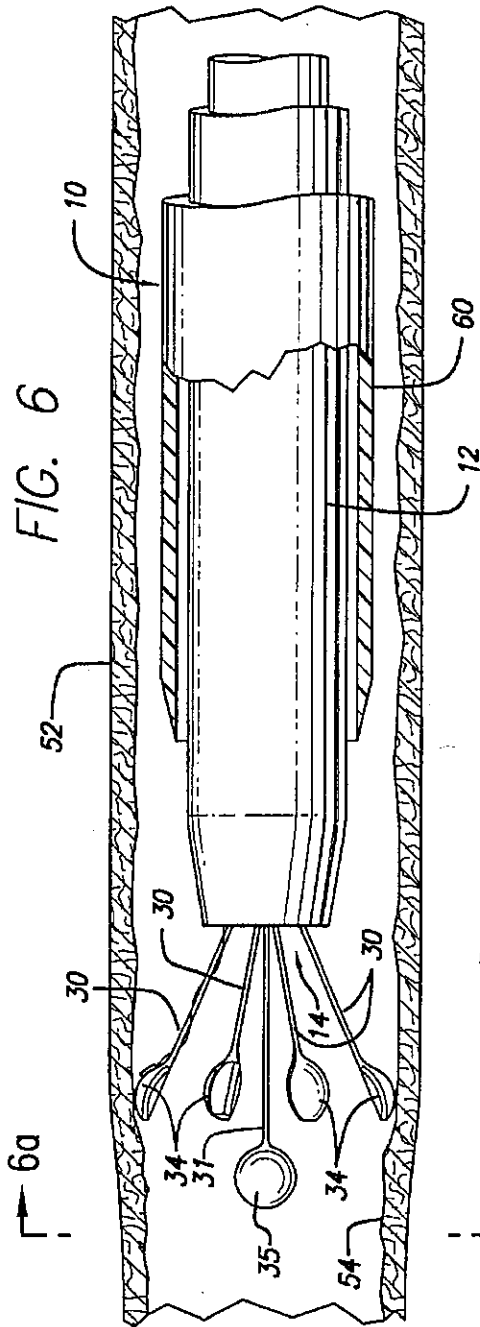


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 4 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

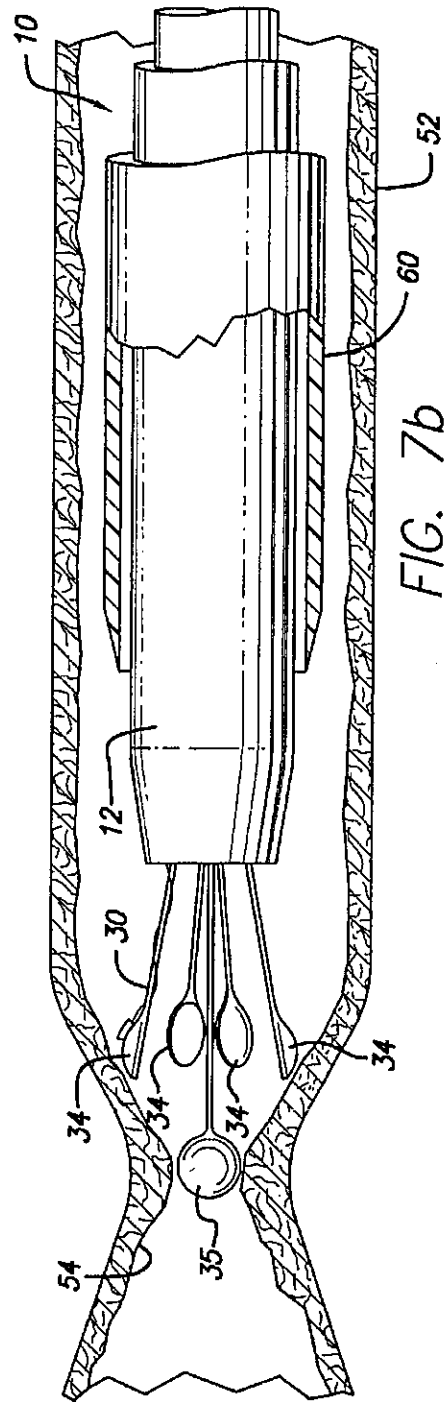
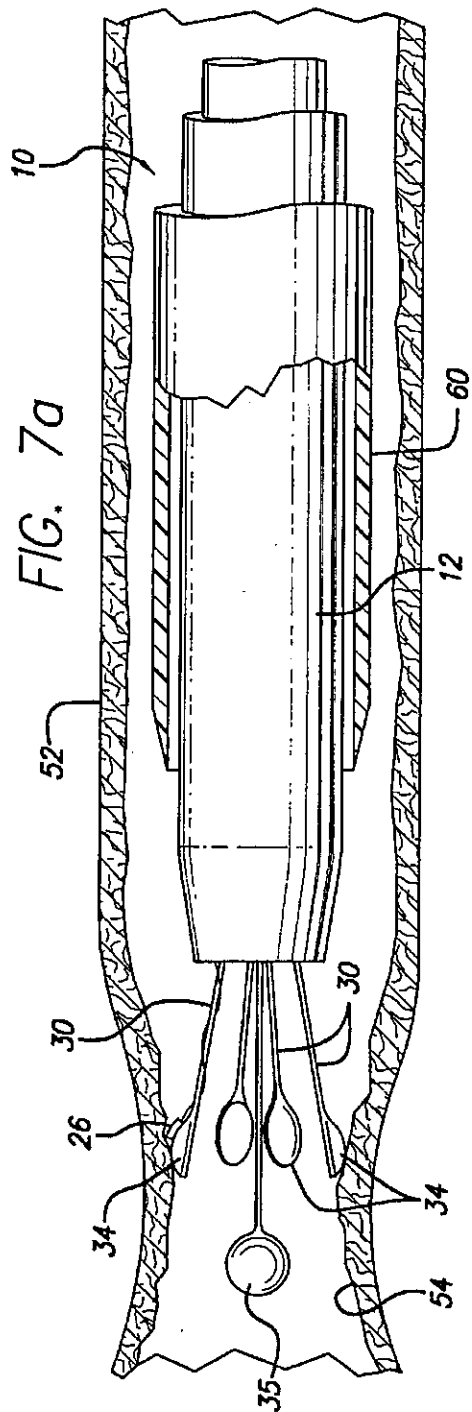


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 5 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

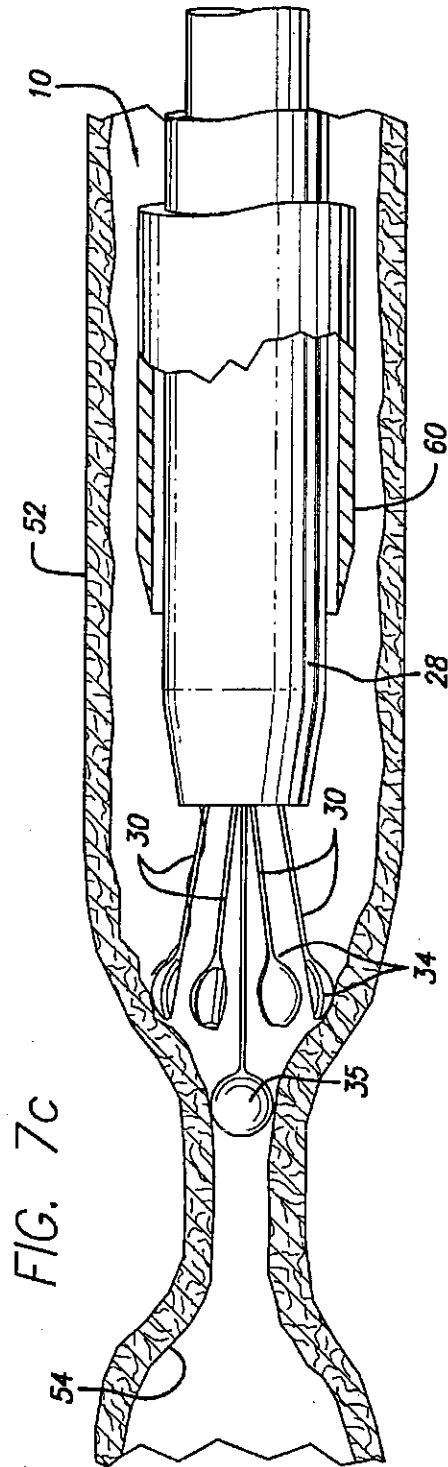


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 6 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

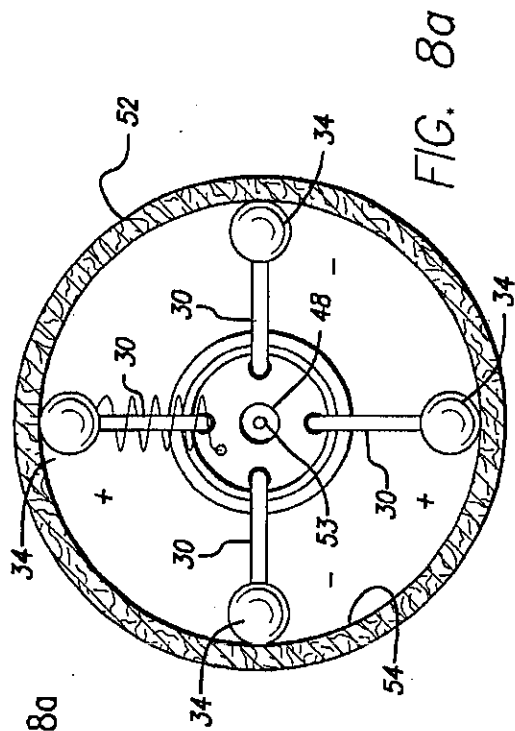
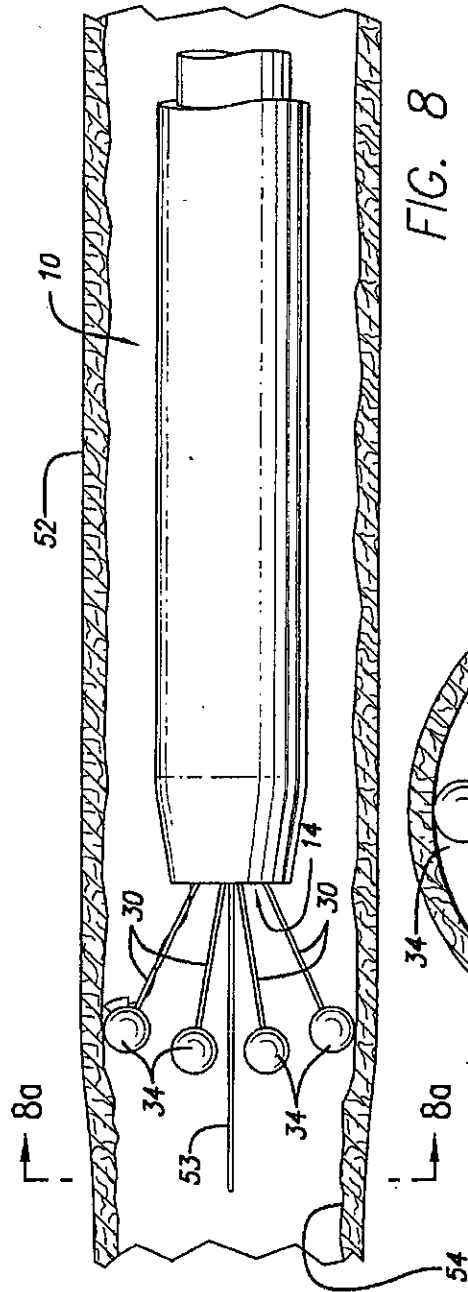


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 7 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

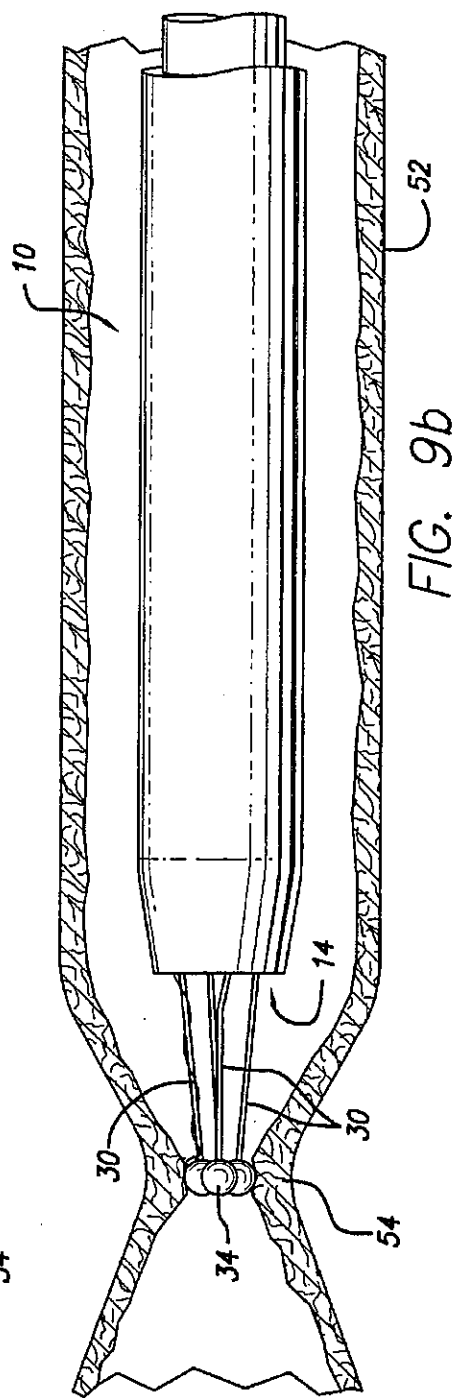
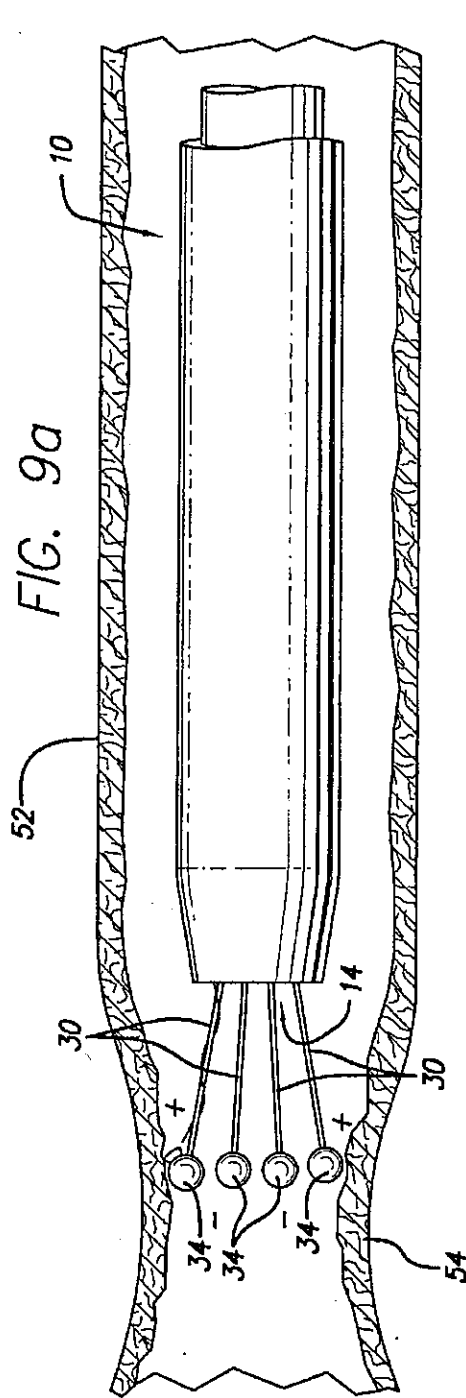


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 8 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2



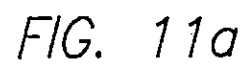
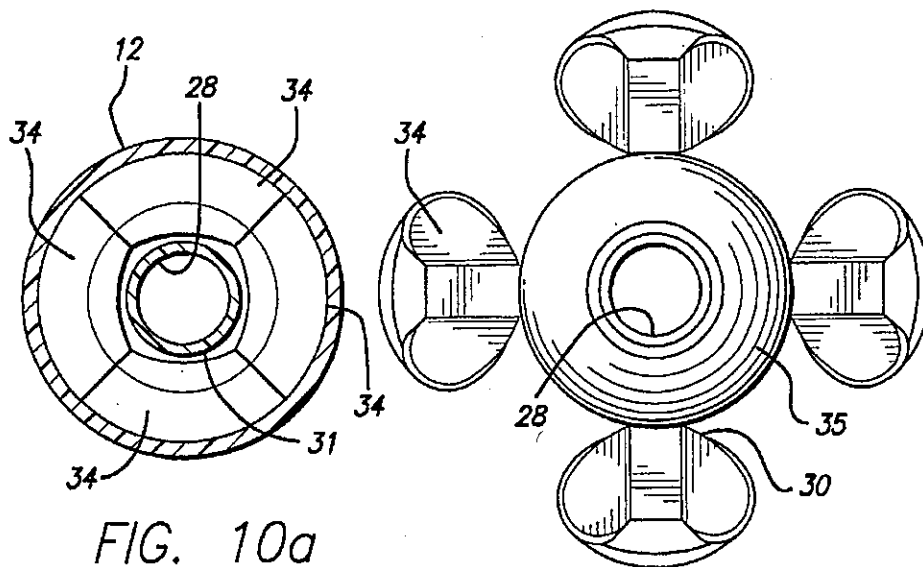
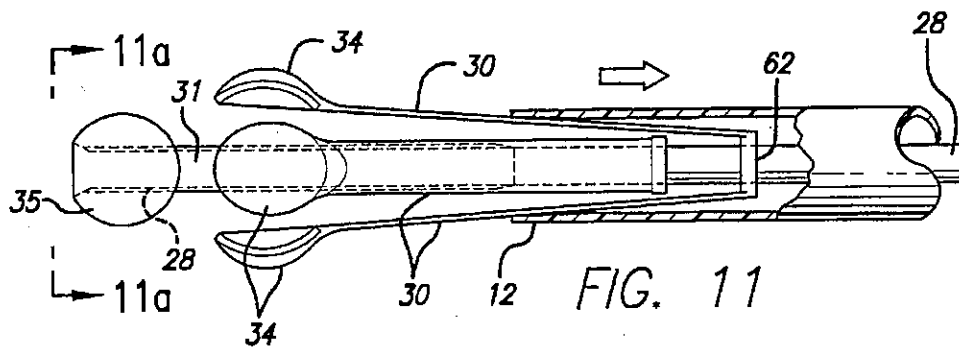
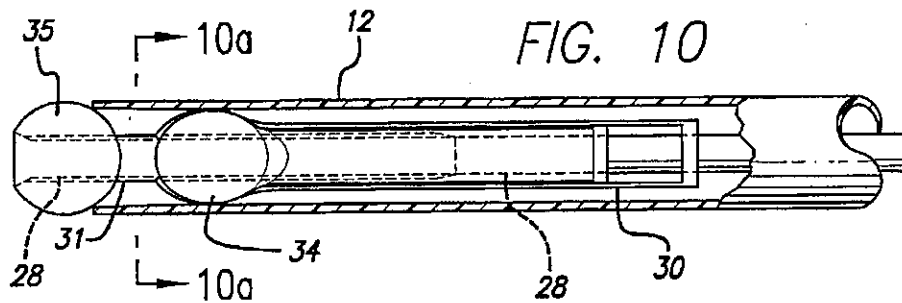


U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 9 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2



U.S. Patent

Aug. 3, 2004

Sheet 10 of 10

US 6,769,433 B2

FIG. 12

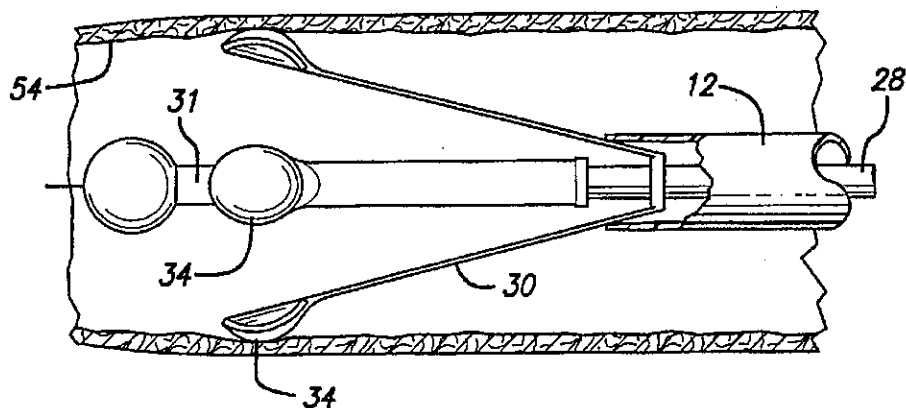


FIG. 13

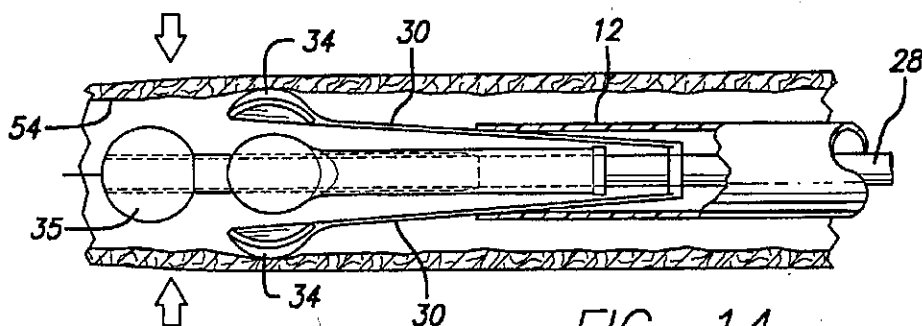
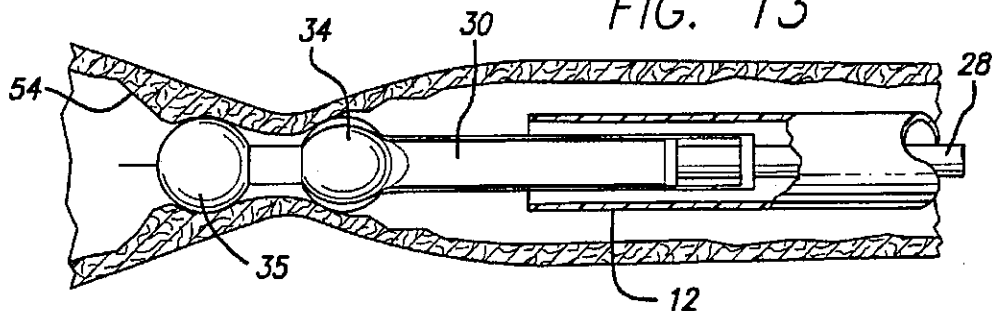


FIG. 14

US 6,769,433 B2

1

# EXPANDABLE VEIN LIGATOR CATHETER HAVING MULTIPLE ELECTRODE LEADS, AND METHOD

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 09/267,756 filed Mar. 10, 1999, now U.S. Pat. No. 6,237,606 which is a divisional of application Ser. No. 08/927,251 filed on Sep. 11, 1997, now U.S. Pat. No. 6,200,312.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates generally to a method and apparatus for applying energy to shrink a hollow anatomical structure such as a vein, and more particularly, to a method and apparatus using an electrode device having multiple leads for applying said energy.

The human venous system of the lower limbs consists essentially of the superficial venous system and the deep venous system with perforating veins connecting the two systems. The superficial system includes the long or great saphenous vein and the short saphenous vein. The deep venous system includes the anterior and posterior tibial veins which unite to form the popliteal vein, which in turn becomes the femoral vein when joined by the short saphenous vein.

The venous system contains numerous one-way valves for directing blood flow back to the heart. Venous valves are usually bicuspid valves, with each cusp forming a sack or reservoir for blood which, under retrograde blood pressure, forces the free surfaces of the cusps together to prevent retrograde flow of the blood and allows only antegrade blood flow to the heart. When an incompetent valve is in the flow path, the valve is unable to close because the cusps do not form a proper seal and retrograde flow of the blood cannot be stopped. When a venous valve fails, increased strain and pressure occur within the lower venous sections and overlying tissues, sometimes leading to additional valvular failure. Two venous conditions which often result from valve failure are varicose veins and more symptomatic chronic venous insufficiency.

The varicose vein condition includes dilation and tortuosity of the superficial veins of the lower limbs, resulting in unsightly discoloration, pain, swelling, and possibly ulceration. Varicose veins often involve incompetence of one or more venous valves, which allow reflux of blood within the superficial system. This can also worsen deep venous reflux and perforator reflux. Current treatments of vein insufficiency include surgical procedures such as vein stripping, ligation, and occasionally, vein-segment transplant.

Ligation involves the cauterization or coagulation of vascular lumina using electrical energy applied through an electrode device. An electrode device is introduced into the vein lumen and positioned so that it contacts the vein wall. Once properly positioned, RF energy is applied to the electrode device thereby causing the vein wall to shrink in cross-sectional diameter. A reduction in cross-sectional diameter, as for example from 5 mm (0.2 in) to 1 mm (0.04 in), significantly reduces the flow of blood through the vein and results in an effective ligation. Though not required for effective ligation, the vein wall may completely collapse thereby resulting in a full-lumen obstruction that blocks the flow of blood through the vein.

One apparatus for performing venous ligation includes a tubular shaft having an electrode device attached at the distal tip. Running through the shaft, from the distal end to the proximal end, are electrical leads. At the proximal end of the shaft, the leads terminate at an electrical connector, while at

2

the distal end of the shaft the leads are connected to the electrode device. The electrical connector provides the interface between the leads and a power source, typically an RF generator. The RF generator operates under the guidance of a control device, usually a microprocessor.

The ligation apparatus may be operated in either a monopolar and bipolar configuration. In the monopolar configuration, the electrode device consists of an electrode that is either positively or negatively charged. A return path for the current passing through the electrode is provided externally from the body, as for example by placing the patient in physical contact with a large low-impedance pad. The current flows from the ligation device to the low impedance pad. In a bipolar configuration, the electrode device consists of a pair of oppositely charged electrodes separated by a dielectric material. Accordingly, in the bipolar mode, the return path for current is provided by the electrode device itself. The current flows from one electrode, through the tissue, and returns by way of the oppositely charged electrode.

To protect against tissue damage; i.e., charring; due to cauterization caused by overheating, a temperature sensing device is attached to the electrode device. The temperature sensing device may be a thermocouple that monitors the temperature of the venous tissue. The thermocouple interfaces with the RF generator and the controller through the shaft and provides electrical signals to the controller which monitors the temperature and adjusts the energy applied to the tissue, through the electrode device, accordingly.

The overall effectiveness of a ligation apparatus is largely dependent on the electrode device contained within the apparatus. Monopolar and bipolar electrode devices that comprise solid devices having a fixed shape and size limit the effectiveness of the ligating apparatus for several reasons. Firstly, a fixed-size electrode device typically contacts the vein wall at only one point on the circumference or inner diameter of the vein wall. As a result, the application of RF energy is highly concentrated within the contacting venous tissue, while the flow of RF current through the remainder of the venous tissue is disproportionately weak. Accordingly, the regions of the vein wall near the point of contact collapse at a faster rate than other regions of the vein wall, resulting in non-uniform shrinkage of the vein lumen. Furthermore, the overall strength of the occlusion may be inadequate and the lumen may eventually reopen. To avoid an inadequate occlusion RF energy must be applied for an extended period of time. Application of RF energy as such increases the temperature of the blood and usually results in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable.

Secondly, the effectiveness of a ligating apparatus having a fixed electrode device is limited to certain sized veins. An attempt to ligate a vein having a diameter that is substantially greater than the electrode device can result in not only non-uniform shrinkage of the vein wall as just described, but also insufficient shrinkage of the vein. The greater the diameter of the vein relative to the diameter of the electrode device, the weaker the energy applied to the vein wall at points distant from the point of contact. Accordingly the vein wall is likely to not completely collapse prior to the venous tissue becoming over cauterized at the point of electrode contact. While coagulation as such may initially occlude the vein, such occlusion may only be temporary in that the coagulated blood may eventually dissolve and the vein partially open. One solution for this inadequacy is an apparatus having interchangeable electrode devices with various diameters. Such a solution, however, is both economically inefficient and tedious to use.

US 6,769,433 B2

3

Hence those skilled in the art have recognized a need for an expandable electrode device and a method capable of evenly distributing RF energy along a circumferential band of a vein wall where the vein wall is greater in diameter than the electrode device, and thereby provide more predictable and effective occlusion of veins while minimizing the formation of heat-induced coagulum. The invention fulfills these needs and others.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Briefly, and in general terms, the present invention provides an apparatus and method for applying energy along a generally circumferential band of a vein wall. The application of energy as such results in a more uniform and predictable shrinkage of the vein wall.

In one aspect of the invention, an apparatus for delivering energy to ligate an anatomical structure comprises a catheter having a sheath, a working end, and an opening formed at the working end of the catheter; an inner member disposed within the sheath such that the inner member and the sheath are capable of being moved relative to one another; a plurality of leads, each lead having a distal end, the plurality of leads being coupled with the inner member such that the distal ends of the plurality of leads extend out of the opening at the working end of the catheter when the position of the sheath changes in one direction relative to the inner member, each lead being formed to move the distal end away from a longitudinal axis defined by the sheath when the plurality of leads are extended out the opening; wherein the distal ends of the leads are configured to deliver energy to the anatomical structure.

In another aspect of the invention, the apparatus includes a secondary lead having a secondary distal end. The secondary lead is coupled with the inner member such that the distal end of the secondary lead is extended out of the opening at the working end of the catheter when the position of the inner member changes in one direction relative to the sheath.

In another aspect of the invention, the distal ends of the leads are electrically connected to a power source such that the polarity of each lead can be switched. Where there is a secondary lead electrode, the plurality of leads can be connected to the power source such that the polarity of the leads can be changed independently of the polarity of the secondary lead.

In another aspect, the leads include primary leads which generally surround the secondary lead at the working end of the catheter. The distal ends of the primary leads are located between the distal end of the secondary lead and the inner member.

In yet another aspect, the invention comprises a method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure from within the structure. The method includes the step of introducing a catheter into the anatomical structure; the catheter having a working end and a plurality of leads, each lead having a distal end, and each lead being connected to a power source. The method also includes the step of expanding the leads outwardly through the distal orifice and expanding the leads until each electrode contacts the anatomical structure. The method further includes the step of applying energy to the anatomical structure from the distal end of the leads, until the anatomical structure collapses.

In another aspect of the invention, the method also includes the step of introducing a catheter into the anatomical structure where the catheter has a secondary lead that has a distal portion that is greater in length than the primary-lead

4

distal portions and is generally surrounded by the primary leads. The secondary lead also has an electrode at the distal end. The method also includes the steps of extending the primary and secondary leads through the orifice until each primary-lead electrode contacts the anatomical structure, and controlling the power source so that adjacent primary leads are of opposite polarity while maintaining the secondary lead so that it is electrically neutral. Upon collapse of the anatomical structure around the primary leads, the polarity of the primary leads is switched so that they are all of the same polarity. Upon switching the polarity of the primary leads so that they are of the same polarity, controlling the power source so that the secondary lead is of opposite polarity relative to the primary leads. The method, in a further aspect, comprises the step of moving the catheter in the anatomical structure while continuing to apply energy to the anatomical structure to lengthen the area of ligation.

In another aspect of the invention, external compression is used to initially force the wall of the vein to collapse toward the catheter. The application of energy molds the vein to durably assume the collapsed state initially achieved mechanically by the external compression. A tourniquet can be used to externally compress or flatten the anatomical structure and initially reduce the diameter of the hollow anatomical structure. The pressure applied by the tourniquet can exsanguinate blood from the venous treatment site, and pre-shape the vein in preparation to be molded to a ligated state. An ultrasound window formed in the tourniquet can be used to facilitate ultrasound imaging of the anatomical structure being treated through the window.

These and other aspects and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the following more detailed description, when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings which illustrate, by way of example, embodiments of the invention.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a diagram of an energy application system with a partial cutaway view of a catheter showing both the working end and the connecting end and incorporating a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 2 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of a first embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully extended position;

FIG. 2a is an end view of the working end of the first embodiment of the catheter taken along line 2a—2a of FIG. 2;

FIG. 3 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the first embodiment depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 4 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of a second catheter in accordance with principles of the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully extended position;

FIG. 4a is an end view of the second embodiment of the invention taken along line 4a—4a of FIG. 4;

FIG. 5 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the second embodiment of the catheter of FIG. 4 depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 2 with the electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure;

FIG. 6a is an end view of the anatomical structure containing the catheter taken along line 6a—6a of FIG. 6;

FIGS. 7a through 7c are cross-sectional views of the anatomical structure containing a catheter in accordance

US 6,769,433 B2

5

with the first embodiment of the invention and depicting the anatomical structure at various stages of ligation;

FIG. 8 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing a catheter in accordance with the second embodiment of the invention as depicted in FIG. 4;

FIG. 8a is an end view of the anatomical structure containing the catheter taken along line 8a--8a of FIG. 8; and

FIGS. 9a and 9b are cross-sectional views of the anatomical structure containing the catheter in accordance with the second embodiment of the invention and depicting the anatomical structure at various stages of ligation;

FIG. 10 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of a third embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully extended position;

FIG. 10a is an end view of the working end of the third embodiment of the catheter taken along line 10a--10a of FIG. 10;

FIG. 11 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the third embodiment depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 11a is a view taken along line 11a--11a of FIG. 11

FIG. 12 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 10 with the electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure;

FIG. 13 is a cross-sectional view of the anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 10 where the anatomical structure is being ligated by the application of energy from the electrodes.

FIG. 14 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 10 with the electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure where external compression is being applied to reduce the diameter of the hollow structure before the application of energy from the electrodes to ligate the structure.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

Turning now to the drawings with more particularity wherein like reference numerals indicate like or corresponding elements among the figures, shown in FIG. 1 is a catheter 10 for applying energy to an anatomical structure such as a vein. The catheter 10 includes an outer sheath 12 having a distal orifice 14 at its working end 15. The connector end 17 of the outer sheath 12 is attached to a handle 16 that includes an electrical connector 18 for interfacing with a power source 22, typically an RF generator, and a microprocessor controller 23. The power source 22 and microprocessor 23 are usually contained in one unit. The controller 23 controls the power source 22 in response to external commands and data from a sensor, such as a thermocouple, located at an intraluminal venous treatment site. In another embodiment, the user can select a constant power output so that automated temperature control is not present and the user can manually adjust the power output in view of the temperature on a display readout. The catheter 10 includes an expandable electrode device 24 (partially shown) that moves in and out of the outer sheath 12 by way of the distal orifice 14. The electrode device includes a plurality of electrodes which can be expanded by moving the electrodes within the shaft, or by moving the outer shaft relative to the electrodes. Although FIG. 1 illustrates a plurality of electrodes surrounding a single central electrode, different electrode configurations will be described for the catheter.

6

Contained within the outer sheath 12 is an inner sheath 28 or inner member. A fluid port 21 communicates with the interior of the outer sheath 12. The catheter 10 can be periodically flushed out with saline through the port 21. The flushing fluid can travel between the outer sheath and the inner sheath. The port also allows for the delivery of drug therapies. Flushing out the catheter prevents the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter 10. The treatment area of the hollow anatomical structure such as a vein can be flushed with a fluid such as saline, or a dielectric fluid, in order to evacuate blood from the treatment area of the vein so as to prevent the formation of coagulum or thrombosis. The use of a dielectric fluid can minimize unintended heating effects away from the treatment area. The dielectric fluid prevents the current of RF energy from flowing away from the vein wall.

In one embodiment, the catheter 10 includes a lumen which begins at the distal tip of the outer sheath 12 and runs substantially along the axis of the outer sheath 12 before terminating at the guide-wire port 20 of the handle 16. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen of the catheter 10 for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. Where the catheter is sized to treat smaller veins, the outer diameter of the catheter may not allow for a fluid flush between the outer sheath 12 and the inner sheath 28. However, a fluid flush can be introduced through the lumen for the guide wire in such an embodiment.

Referring now to FIGS. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a and 5, the outer sheath 12 includes a shell 44 and a tip portion 46. To provide an atraumatic tip for the catheter 10 as it is manipulated through the vein, the tip 46 is preferably tapered inward at its distal end or is "nosecone" shaped. The tip 46, however, can have other shapes that facilitate tracking of the catheter 10 over a guide wire and through the bends in the venous vascular system. The nosecone-shaped tip 46 can, for example, be fabricated from a polymer having a soft durometer, such as 70 Shore A. The shell 44 comprises a biocompatible material having a low coefficient of friction. In one configuration, the outer sheath 12 is sized to fit within a venous lumen and for example may be between 5 and 9 French, which corresponds to a diameter of between 1.7 mm (0.07 in) and 3.0 mm (1.2 in), or other sizes as appropriate.

The electrode device 24 contains a number of leads, including insulated primary leads 30 and, in some embodiments, a secondary lead 31. Preferably, the leads are connected to the power source 22 (FIG. 1) such that the polarity of the leads may be switched as desired. Alternately, a microprocessor controller can be used to switch the polarity, as well as control other characteristics of the power for the electrode device. Thus the electrode device can operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads 30 have opposite polarity the electrode device 24 operates as a bipolar electrode device. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged the electrode device 24 can operate as a monopolar electrode device. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged, and a secondary lead 31 has an opposite polarity, the electrode device 24 operates as a bipolar electrode device. The embodiment of the invention shown in FIGS. 2 and 3 depict an electrode device 24 having four primary leads 30 and a secondary lead 31, while the embodiment of the invention shown in FIGS. 4 and 5 depict an electrode device 24 having only four primary leads. The invention is not limited to four primary leads 30; more or fewer leads may be used in either embodiment. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the hollow anatomical structure to be treated. The apposed electrodes should be



US 6,769,433 B2

7

kept within a certain distance of one another. Larger vessels may require more primary leads to ensure proper current density and proper heat distribution.

The insulation on each of the leads 30, 31 may be removed at the distal end 32, 33 to expose the conductive wire. In the first configuration as shown in FIGS. 2, 2a, and 3, the electrode 34 has a hemispherical shape. In a second configuration, the electrode can have either a generally spherical shape or a spoon shape. As shown in FIGS. 4, 4a and 5, the electrodes have a spoon shape which can be combined to form a sphere or other shape so as to minimize its profile when the vein collapses. The electrodes 34 are either integrally formed at the distal end 32, soldered, or otherwise formed to the distal end of each primary lead 30. It is to be understood that when the distal end 32 is referred to as acting as an electrode, this is not limited to where the electrode 34 is integrally formed at the distal end 32. For example, the distal end can apply energy to the surrounding tissue where there is an electrode integrally formed at the distal end, or where an electrode is separately soldered to the distal end, or where there is another energy delivery device located at the distal end. The electrode 34 typically has a diameter greater than the diameter of the primary lead 30. For example, the primary lead 30 may have a diameter ranging from 0.18 mm (0.007 in.) to 0.28 mm (0.011 in.), while the electrode 34 has a diameter of 0.36 mm (0.014 in.) to 0.51 mm (0.020 in.). The primary leads 30 and the electrodes 34 are preferably made from a biologically-compatible material such as stainless steel. The insulation surrounding the primary leads 30 generally has a thickness of between 0.03 mm (0.001 in.) and 0.06 mm (0.0025 in.), resulting in a combined lead-insulation diameter of between 0.23 mm (0.009 in.) and 0.41 mm (0.016 in.). In an alternate configuration, as shown in FIGS. 2 and 3, each primary lead 30 is strip-shaped with a width from 0.76 mm (0.03 in.) to 1.0 mm (0.04 in.) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005 in.), while the secondary lead 31 is typically tubular-shaped. It should be noted that these dimensions are provided for illustrative purposes, and not by way of limitation. A hemispherically shaped electrode 34 is formed at the distal end, as for example, by sanding down a sixteenth-inch (1.6 mm) diameter sphere which is soldered to the distal end 32 of the primary lead 30. The electrodes can also be constructed by stamping the desired shape or configuration from the conductive lead. The electrode is integral with the lead, and the remainder of the lead is insulated. The distal end 33 of the secondary lead 31 preferably includes a generally spherically-shaped electrode 35.

An alignment device 36 arranges the leads 30, 31 such that they are mounted to the catheter at only their proximal ends and so that separation is maintained between the leads within, and distal to the alignment device. The leads can form cantilevers when mounted on the alignment device. A preferred configuration of the alignment device 36 includes a plurality of off-center, axially-aligned lumina 38 which are substantially symmetrically positioned relative to the axis of the alignment device 36. The alignment device 36 is formed, for example, by extruding the plurality of axially-aligned lumina 38 through a solid cylinder composed of a dielectric material, such as polyamide. Each lead 30 passes through an individual off-center lumen 38 and exits out the rear of the alignment device 36. The alignment device 36 may further include a central lumen 48 that may be aligned with the axis. In some embodiments the central lumen 48 is used for accepting a guide wire or for the delivery or perfusion of medicant and cooling solution to the treatment area during application of RF energy. In other embodiments, the central

8

lumen 48 may be used for the secondary lead 31. The alignment device 36 may also further include an auxiliary lumen 47 for additional leads, such as the leads of a thermocouple used as a temperature sensor. The alignment device 36 comprises a dielectric material to prevent or minimize any coupling effect the leads 30, 31 may have with each other and, if present, the guide wire. The length of the alignment device is, for example, 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) to 19.0 mm (0.75 in.) in one embodiment. However, these dimensions are provided for purposes of illustration and not by way of limitation.

In the embodiment of the invention shown in FIGS. 2, 2a and 3, the inner sheath 28 is attached to the alignment device 36 and extends beyond the rear 37 of the alignment device. Preferably, the inner sheath 28 completely surrounds the exterior wall of the alignment device 36 and is mounted to it by adhesive or press fit or in other manner such that it remains in a fixed position relative to the inner sheath. The inner sheath and alignment device can act as an inner member relative to the outer sheath. The inner sheath 28 comprises a biocompatible material with a low coefficient of friction. The inner sheath 28 provides a pathway for the interconnection between the leads 30, 31 and the electrical connector 18 (FIG. 1). This interconnection may occur in any of several ways. The leads 30, 31 themselves may be continuous and run the entire length of the inner sheath 28. In the alternative (not shown), the positively charged leads 30, 31 may couple with a common positively charged conductor housed in the inner sheath 28. Likewise, the negatively charged leads 30, 31 may couple with a common negative conductor. Preferably, the leads 30, 31 are connected to a conductor that allows for the polarity of the leads to be switched. The conductor may comprise, for example, a 36 gauge copper lead with a polyurethane coating. The coupling may occur at any point within the inner sheath 28. To reduce the amount of wire contained in the catheter, it is advantageous to couple the leads 30, 31 at the point where the leads exit the rear 37 of the alignment device 36. To add further stability to the electrode device 24, it is preferred that bonding material 40 surround the leads 30, 31 at the front end of the alignment device 36. In this embodiment, the leads 30, 31 exit through the distal orifice 14 as the outer sheath 12 is retracted backwards over the alignment device 36. The inwardly tapered tip 46 impedes the retracting movement of the outer sheath 12 to prevent the exposure of the alignment device 36.

FIG. 3 shows the leads 30 and 31 in the retracted position where all leads are within the nosecone-shaped tip portion 46 and the outer shell 44. The alignment device 36 has been moved relative to the outer shell 44. The soft nosecone provides an atraumatic tip for when the catheter is maneuvered through the tortuous venous system. The electrode at the distal end of the secondary lead 31 can be sized to approximately the same size as the opening formed in the nosecone 46. The nosecone forms a closed atraumatic tip together with the electrode of the secondary lead when the alignment device is retracted into the outer sheath of the catheter. This can present an atraumatic tip even where the nosecone is not constructed from a material having a soft durometer.

Referring now to FIGS. 4 and 5, in another embodiment, the alignment device 36 is attached to the outer sheath 12 and thereby remains immobile in relation to it. The inner sheath 28 is movably positioned at the rear of the alignment device 36 and again provides a pathway for the interconnection between the primary leads 30 and the electrical connector 18 (FIG. 1). In some embodiments the inner

US 6,769,433 B2

9

sheath 28 contains a guide-wire tube 49 that runs the entire length of the inner sheath. The guide-wire tube 49 is aligned to communicate with the central lumen 48 of the alignment device 36 at one end and with the guide-wire port 20 (FIG. 1) at the other end. The primary leads 30 may be continuous and run the entire length of the inner sheath 28 or they may be coupled to common leads as previously described. The primary leads 30 are secured to the front end 27 of the inner sheath 28, as for example with a potting material 50, so that the movement of the inner sheath 28 results in a corresponding movement of the primary leads 30 through the lumina 38 of the alignment device 36. In this embodiment, the primary leads 30 are not secured to the alignment device 36 and in essence are free-floating leads in the axial direction. The primary leads 30 travel through the alignment device 36 and exit through the distal orifice 14 as the front end of the inner sheath 28 is moved toward the rear 37 of the alignment device 36.

In the above embodiments, the primary leads 30 are formed, e.g., arced or bent, to move away from each other and thereby avoid contact. The "distal portion" of the primary leads 30 is the portion of the lead which extends from the front end of the alignment device 36 when the leads are fully extended through the distal orifice 14. It is preferred that the distal portions 42 are formed to move radially outward from each other relative to the axis of the alignment device 36 and form a symmetrical arrangement. This is shown in both the embodiments of FIG. 2a and FIG. 4a. The degree of arc or bend in the primary leads 30 may be any that is sufficient to radially expand the leads as they exit the outer sheath 12 through the distal orifice 14. It is essential that the degree of the arc or bend be sufficient to provide enough force so that the primary leads 30 expand through blood and the electrodes 34 come in apposition with the vein wall. The electrodes are preferably partially embedded in the vein wall to assure full contact. The rounded portion of the electrode is embedded into the vein wall to achieve full surface apposition so that the entire uninsulated surface area of the electrode is in contact with venous tissue for effective current distribution. The surface area of the electrodes in contact with the venous tissue preferably is sufficient to avoid a high current density which may lead to spot heating of the venous tissue. The heating effect is preferably distributed along a circumferential band of the vein. The apposed electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters from one another along the circumference of the vein. Thus, the electrode arrangement is related to the size or diameter of the vein being treated. Other properties of the primary leads 30, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. For example, in one configuration of the electrode device 24, a wire having a diameter of between 0.18 mm (0.007 in) and 0.28 mm (0.011 in) with a total insulation thickness of between 0.05 mm (0.002 in) to 0.13 mm (0.005 in) is arced or bent at an acute angle to provide sufficient apposition with the anatomical structure. It is to be understood that these dimensions are provided for illustrative purposes, and not by way of limitation.

Other techniques for expanding the leads outwardly once they have been extended from the working end of the catheter may be possible. For example, the leads may be straight but are mounted in the alignment device at an angle such that they are normally directed outward.

For increased appositional force, it is preferred that the primary leads 30 be strip-shaped, that is rectangular in cross section, with dimensions, for example, of a width from 0.76

10

mm (0.030 in.) to 1.0 mm (0.039 in) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005 in.). The rectangular cross section provides increased resistance to bending in the width dimension but allows bending more freely in the thickness dimension. This strip-shaped configuration of the primary leads 30 is shown in FIGS. 2, 2a, and 3 and provides for increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. In FIGS. 2, 2a, and 3, each primary lead comprises a rectangular cross section mounted in relation to the catheter such that the thinner dimension of the rectangular cross section is aligned with the direction of expansion of the lead. The leads are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward, and a uniform spacing between leads is more assured. Uniform spacing promotes uniform heating around the venous tissue which is in apposition with the electrodes at the distal ends of the leads.

The length of the distal portion of the leads 30 also affects the configuration of the electrode device 24. The maximum distance between two mutually opposed electrodes 34; i.e., the effective diameter of the electrode device 24, is affected by the bend degree and length of the distal portion 42. The longer the length of the distal portion 42 the greater the diameter of the electrode device 24. Accordingly, by changing the distal portion 42 length and arc or bend degree, the catheter 10 can be configured for use in differently sized anatomical structures.

Different numbers of leads 30, 31 can be employed with the catheter. The number of leads 30, 31 is limited by the diameter of the alignment device 36 and the number of lumina 36, 38, 47 that can be extruded through the alignment device. In a bipolar configuration, an even number of primary leads 30 are preferably available to form a number of oppositely charged electrode pairs. The electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure should be maintained within a certain distance of each other. In a monopolar configuration, any number of commonly charged leads 30 can be present. In the monopolar mode, distribution of RF energy through the anatomical tissue is obtained by creating a return path for current through the tissue by providing a return device at a point external from the tissue, such as a large metal pad.

Now referring again to FIG. 1, an actuator 25 controls the extension of the electrode device 24 through the distal orifice 14. The actuator 25 may take the form of a switch, lever, threaded control knob, or other suitable mechanism, and is preferably one that can provide fine control over the movement of the outer sheath 12 or the inner sheath 28, as the case may be. In one embodiment of the invention, the actuator 25 (FIG. 1) interfaces with the outer sheath 12 (FIGS. 2, 2a and 3) to move it back and forth relative to the inner sheath 28. In another embodiment the actuator 25 (FIG. 1) interfaces with the inner sheath 28 (FIGS. 4, 4a and 5) to move it back and forth relative to the outer sheath 12. The relative position between the outer sheath and inner sheath is thus controlled, but other control approaches may be used.

Referring again to FIGS. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a and 5, the catheter 10 includes a temperature sensor 26, such as a thermocouple. The temperature sensor 26 is mounted in place on an electrode 34 so that the sensor 26 is nearly or is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 34. The sensor 26 is shown in the drawings as protruding from the electrodes for clarity of illustration only. The sensor 26 senses the temperature of the portion of the anatomical tissue that is in apposition with the exposed electrode surface. Monitoring the temperature of the anatomical tissue

US 6,769,433 B2

11

provides a good indication of when shrinkage of the tissue is ready to begin. A temperature sensor 26 placed on the electrode facing the anatomical tissue provides an indication of when shrinkage occurs (70° C. or higher) and when significant amounts of heat-induced coagulum may begin to form on the electrodes (at 85° C. or higher). Therefore maintaining the temperature above 70 degrees Centigrade produces a therapeutic shrinkage of the anatomical structure. Application of the RF energy from the electrodes 34 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, typically the temperature at which anatomical tissue begins to cauterize. The temperature sensor 26 interfaces with the controller 23 (FIG. 1) through a pair of sensor leads 45 which preferably run through the auxiliary lumen 47 and then through the inner sheath 28. The signals from the temperature sensor 26 are provided to the controller 23 which controls the magnitude of RF energy supplied to the electrodes 34 in accordance with the selected temperature criteria and the monitored temperature. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring, and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein is detected and to avoid overheating the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 6, 6a and 7a through 7c, in the operation of one embodiment of the catheter 10, the catheter is inserted into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein 52. The catheter is similar to the embodiment discussed in connection with FIGS. 2 and 3. The catheter 10 further includes an external sheath 60 through which a fluid can be delivered to the treatment site. In this embodiment, the fluid port (not shown) communicates with the interior of the external sheath 60, and fluid is delivered from between the external sheath 60 and the outer sheath 12. The external sheath 60 surrounds the outer sheath 12 to form a coaxial channel through which fluid may be flushed.

Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or other technique may be used to direct the specific placement of the catheter and confirm the position in the vein. The actuator (not shown) is then operated to shift the outer sheath relative to the inner sheath by either retracting the outer sheath 12 backward or advancing the inner sheath 28 forward to expose the leads 30, 31 through the distal orifice 14. As the leads 30, 31 exit the distal orifice 14, the primary leads 30 expand radially outward relative to the axis of the alignment device 36, while the secondary lead 31 remains substantially linear. The primary leads 30 continue to move outward until apposition with the vein wall 54 occurs and the outward movement of the primary leads 30 is impeded. The primary leads 30 contact the vein along a generally circumferential band of the vein wall 54. This outward movement of the primary leads 30 occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion. As a result, the primary-lead electrodes 34 are substantially evenly spaced along the circumferential band of the vein wall 54. The central-lead electrode 35 is suspended within the vein 52 without contacting the vein wall 54.

When the electrodes 34 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the power supply 22 is activated to provide suitable RF energy, preferably at a selected frequency from a range of 250 kHz to 350 MHz. One suitable frequency is 510 kHz. One criterion used in selecting the frequency of the energy to be applied is the control desired over the spread, including the depth, of the thermal effect in the venous tissue. Another criterion is compatibility with filter circuits for eliminating RF noise from thermocouple signals.

12

In bipolar operation, the primary leads 30 are initially charged such that adjacent leads are oppositely charged while the secondary lead is electrically neutral. These multiple pairs of oppositely charged leads 30 form active electrode pairs to produce an RF field between them. Thus, discrete RF fields are set up along the circumferential band of the vein wall 54. These discrete fields form a symmetrical RF field pattern along the entire circumferential band of the vein wall 54, as adjacent electrodes 34 of opposite polarity produce RF fields between each other. A uniform temperature distribution can be achieved along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy is converted within the adjacent venous tissue into heat, and this thermal effect causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein. A uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated avoids the formation of hot spots in the treatment area while promoting controlled uniform reduction in vein diameter. The thermal effect produces structural transfiguration of the collagen fibrils in the vein. The collagen fibrils shorten and thicken in cross-section in response to the heat from the thermal effect. As shown in FIG. 7a, the energy causes the vein wall 54 to collapse around the primary-lead electrodes 34. The wall 54 continues to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the electrodes 34. The electrodes are pressed farther and farther together by the shrinking vein wall 54 until they touch and at that point, further collapse or ligation of the wall 54 is impeded. Upon collapse of the vein wall 54 around the primary-lead electrodes 34, the polarity of the primary-lead electrodes is switched so that all primary-lead electrodes are commonly charged. The switching of polarity for the leads need not be instantaneous. The application of RF energy can be ceased, the polarity switched, and then RF energy is applied again at the switched polarity. The secondary-lead electrode 35 is then charged so that its polarity is opposite that of the primary-lead electrodes 34. The RF field is set up between the primary-lead electrodes 34 and the secondary-lead electrode 35.

The catheter 10 is then pulled back while energy is applied to the electrode device. As shown in FIG. 7b, while the catheter 10 is being pulled back, the primary-lead electrodes 34 remain in apposition with the vein wall 54 while the secondary-lead electrode 35 comes in contact with the portion of the vein wall previously collapsed by the primary-lead electrodes 34. Accordingly, RF energy passes through the vein wall 54 between the primary-lead electrodes 34 and the secondary-lead electrode 35 and the vein wall continues to collapse around the secondary-lead electrode 35 as the catheter 10 is being retracted. As shown in FIG. 7c, ligation in accordance with this method results in an occlusion along a length of the vein 52. A lengthy occlusion, as opposed to an acute occlusion, is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization.

A similar result is achieved when the catheter 10 having both primary and secondary leads is operated in a monopolar manner. In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 35 remains neutral, while the primary leads 30 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form a series of discrete RF fields. These RF fields are substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein and travel along the axial length of the vein wall causing the vein wall to collapse around the primary-lead electrodes. Upon collapse of the vein wall, the secondary-lead electrode is charged to have the same polarity as that of the primary-lead electrodes. The electrode device is



US 6,769,433 B2

13

retracted and the vein wall collapses as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall, regardless of the diameter of the vein 52. This symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion. Furthermore, the uniform distribution of energy allows for the application of RF energy for a short duration and thereby reduces or avoids the formation of heat-induced coagulum on the electrodes 34. The leads, including the non-convex outer portion of the electrode, are insulated to further prevent heating of the surrounding blood.

Fluid can be delivered before and during RF heating of the vein being treated through a coaxial channel formed between the external sheath 60 and the outer sheath 12. It is to be understood that another lumen can be formed in the catheter to deliver fluid to the treatment site. The delivered fluid displaces or exsanguinates blood from the vein so as to avoid heating and coagulation of blood. Fluid can continue to be delivered during RF treatment to prevent blood from circulating back to the treatment site. The delivery of a dielectric fluid increases the surrounding impedance so that RF energy is directed into the tissue of the vein wall.

Referring now to FIGS. 8, 8a, 9a and 9b, in the operation of an alternate embodiment of the catheter 10 that may be used with a guide wire 53. As in the previous embodiment, the catheter 10 is inserted into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein 52. The guide wire 53 is advanced past the point where energy application is desired. The catheter 10 is then inserted over the guide wire 53 by way of the central lumen 48 and the guide wire tube 49 (FIG. 4) and is advanced over the guide wire through the vein to the desired point. The guide wire 53 is typically pulled back or removed before RF energy is applied to the electrode device 24.

The actuator 25 (FIG. 1) is then manipulated to either retract the outer sheath 12 backward, or advance the inner sheath 28 forward to expose the leads 30 through the distal orifice 14. The leads 30 exit the distal orifice 14 and expand radially outward relative to the axis of the alignment device 36. The leads 30 continue to move outward until apposition with the vein wall 54 occurs. The leads 30 contact the vein along a generally circumferential band of the vein wall 54. This outward movement of the leads occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion. As a result, the electrodes 34 are substantially evenly spaced along the circumferential band of the vein wall 54. Alternately, the electrodes can be spaced apart in a staggered fashion such that the electrodes do not lie along the same plane. For example, adjacent electrodes can extend different lengths from the catheter so that a smaller cross-sectional profile is achieved when the electrodes are collapsed toward one another.

When the electrodes 34 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the power supply 22 is activated to provide suitable RF energy to the electrodes 34 so that the catheter 10 operates in either a bipolar or monopolar manner as previously described. As shown in FIGS. 9a and 9b, the energy causes the vein wall 54 to collapse around the electrodes 34 causing the leads to substantially straighten and the electrodes to cluster around each other. The wall 54 continues to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the electrodes 34 (FIG. 9b). At this point the application of energy may cease. The electrodes can be configured to form a shape with a reduced profile when collapsed together. The electrodes can also be configured and insulated to continue

14

applying RF energy after forming a reduced profile shape by the collapse of the vein wall. The catheter 10 can be pulled back to ligate the adjacent venous segment. If a temperature sensor 26 is included, the application of energy may cease prior to complete collapse if the temperature of the venous tissue rises above an acceptable level as defined by the controller 23.

Where the catheter includes a fluid delivery lumen (not shown), fluid can be delivered before and during RF heating of the vein being treated. The fluid can displace blood from the treatment area in the vein to avoid the coagulation of blood. The fluid can be a dielectric medium. The fluid can include an anticoagulant such as heparin which can chemically discourage the coagulation of blood at the treatment site.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section, the actuator mechanism causes the primary leads to return to the interior of the outer sheath 12. Either the outer sheath or the inner sheath is moved to change the position of the two elements relative to one another. Once the leads 30 are within the outer sheath 12, the catheter 10 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated. Upon treatment of all venous sites, the catheter 10 is removed from the vasculature. The access point of the vein is then sutured closed, or local pressure is applied until bleeding is controlled.

Another embodiment of the catheter is illustrated in FIG. 10. The inner member or sheath 28 is contained within the outer sheath 12. The inner sheath is preferably constructed from a flexible polymer such as polyimide, polyethylene, or nylon, and can travel the entire length of the catheter. The majority of the catheter should be flexible so as to navigate the tortuous paths of the venous system. A hypotube having a flared distal end 33 and a circular cross-sectional shape is attached over the distal end of the inner sheath 28. The hypotube is preferably no more than about two to three centimeters in length. The hypotube acts as part of the conductive secondary lead 31. An uninsulated conductive electrode sphere 35 is slipped over the hypotube. The flared distal end of the hypotube prevents the electrode sphere from moving beyond the distal end of the hypotube. The sphere is permanently affixed to the hypotube, such as by soldering the sphere both front and back on the hypotube. The majority or the entire surface of the spherical electrode 35 remains uninsulated. The remainder of the hypotube is preferably insulated so that the sphere-shaped distal end can act as the electrode. For example, the hypotube can be covered with an insulating material such as a coating of parylene. The interior lumen of the hypotube is lined by the inner sheath 28 which is attached to the flared distal end of the hypotube by adhesive such as epoxy.

Surrounding the secondary lead 31 and sphere-shaped electrode 35 are a plurality of primary leads 30 which preferably have a flat rectangular strip shape and can act as arms. As illustrated in FIG. 11, the plurality of primary leads are preferably connected to common conductive rings 62. This configuration maintains the position of the plurality of primary leads, while reducing the number of internal electrical connections. The rings 62 are attached to the inner sheath 28. The position of the rings and the primary leads relative to the outer sheath follows that of the inner sheath. As earlier described, the hypotube of the secondary lead 31 is also attached to the inner sheath 28. Two separate conductive rings can be used so that the polarity of different primary leads can be controlled separately. For example, adjacent primary leads can be connected to one of the two separate conductive rings so that the adjacent leads can be

US 6,769,433 B2

15

switched to have either opposite polarities or the same polarity. The rings are preferably spaced closely together, but remain electrically isolated from one another along the inner sheath. Both the rings and the hypotube are coupled with the inner sheath, and the primary leads 30 that are connected to the rings move together with and secondary lead while remaining electrically isolated from one another. Epoxy or another suitable adhesive can be used to attach the rings to the inner sheath. The primary leads from the respective rings each alternate with each other along the circumference of the inner sheath. The insulation along the underside of the leads prevents an electrical short between the rings.

The ring and primary leads are attached together to act as cantilevers where the ring forms the base and the rectangular primary leads operate as the cantilever arms. The leads 30 are connected to the ring and are formed to have an arc or bend such that the leads act as arms which tend to spring outwardly away from the catheter and toward the surrounding venous tissue. Insulation along the underside of the leads and the rings prevents unintended electrical coupling between the leads and the opposing rings. Alternately, the leads are formed straight and connected to the ring at an angle, such that the leads tend to expand or spring radially outward from the ring. The angle at which the leads are attached to the ring should be sufficient to force the primary distal ends and electrodes 34 through blood and into apposition with the vein wall. Other properties of the primary leads 30, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. The rectangular cross section of the leads 30 can provide increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. The leads 30 are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward, and a uniform spacing between leads is more assured. Uniform spacing between the leads 30 and the distal ends promotes uniform heating around the vein by the electrodes 34.

The distal ends of the primary leads 30 are uninsulated to act as electrodes 34 having a spoon or hemispherical shape. The leads can be stamped to produce an integral shaped electrode at the distal end of the lead. The uninsulated outer portion of the distal end electrode 34 which is to come into apposition with the wall of the anatomical structure is preferably rounded and convex. The flattened or non-convex inner portion of the distal end is insulated to minimize any unintended thermal effect, such as on the surrounding blood in a vein. The distal end electrodes 34 are configured such that when the distal ends are forced toward the inner sheath 12, as shown in FIG. 10a, the distal ends combine to form a substantially spherical shape with a profile smaller than the profile for the spherical electrode 35 at the secondary distal end.

The outer sheath 12 can slide over and surround the primary and secondary leads 30, 31. The outer sheath 12 includes an orifice which is dimensioned to have approximately the same size as the spherical electrode 35 at the secondary distal end which functions as an electrode. A close or snug fit between the electrode 35 at the secondary distal end and the orifice of the outer sheath 12 is achieved. This configuration provides an atraumatic tip for the catheter. The electrode 35 secondary distal end is preferably slightly larger than the orifice. The inner diameter of the outer sheath 12 is approximately the same as the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 34. The diameter of the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 34 is preferably less than the inner diameter of the outer sheath.

16

A fluid port (not shown) can communicate with the interior of the outer sheath 12 so that fluid can be flushed between the outer sheath 12 and the inner sheath 28. Alternately, a fluid port can communicate with a central lumen 48 in the hypotube which can also accept a guidewire. As previously stated, the catheter 10 can be periodically flushed with saline which can prevent the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter 10. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen 48 for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. As previously described, a fluid can be flushed or delivered through the lumen as well. If a central lumen is not desired, the lumen of the hypotube can be filled with solder.

Preferably, the primary leads 30 and the connecting rings are connected to a power source 22 such that the polarity of the leads may be switched as desired. This allows for the electrode device 24 to operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads 30 have opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation is available. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged a monopolar electrode operation is available in combination with a large return electrode pad placed in contact with the patient. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged, and a secondary lead 31 has an opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation is available. More or fewer leads may be used. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the hollow anatomical structure to be treated.

Although not shown, it is to be understood that the catheter 10 can include a temperature sensor, such as a thermocouple, mounted in place on the distal end or electrode 34 so that the sensor is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 34. The sensor senses the temperature of the portion of the anatomical tissue that is in apposition with the exposed electrode surface. Application of the RF energy from the electrodes 34 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, such as the temperature at which anatomical tissue begins to cauterize. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring, and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein is detected and to avoid overheating the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 12 through 14, in the operation of one embodiment of the catheter 10, the catheter is inserted into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein. Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or another technique may be used to direct and confirm the specific placement of the catheter in the vein. The actuator is then operated to retract the outer sheath 12 to expose the leads 30, 31. As the outer sheath no longer restrains the leads, the primary leads 30 move outward relative to the axis defined by the outer sheath, while the secondary lead 31 remains substantially linear along the axis defined by the outer sheath. The primary leads 30 continue to move outward until the distal end electrode 34 of the primary leads are placed in apposition with the vein wall 54 occurs and the outward movement of the primary leads 30 is impeded. The primary leads 30 contact the vein along a generally circumferential area of the vein wall 54. This outward movement of the primary leads 30 occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion so that the primary distal end electrodes 34 are substantially evenly spaced. The central-lead electrode 35 is suspended within the vein without contacting the vein wall 54.

When the electrodes 34 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the power supply 22 is activated to provide

US 6,769,433 B2

17

suitable RF energy. In a bipolar operation, the primary leads 30 are initially charged such that adjacent leads are oppositely charged while the secondary lead is electrically neutral. These multiple pairs of oppositely charged leads 30 form active electrode pairs to produce an RF field between them, and form a symmetrical RF field pattern along a circumferential band of the vein wall to achieve a uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy produces a thermal effect which causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein. As shown in FIG. 13, the energy causes the vein wall 54 to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the electrodes 34. The electrodes are pressed closer together by the shrinking vein wall. The electrodes 34 are pressed together to assume a reduced profile shape which is sufficiently small so that the vein is effectively ligated. Upon collapse of the vein wall 54 around the primary-lead electrodes 34, the polarity of the primary-lead electrodes is switched so that all of the primary-lead electrodes are commonly charged. The secondary-lead electrode 35 is then charged so that its polarity is opposite that of the primary-lead electrodes 34. Where the primary electrodes 34 and the secondary electrode 35 are spaced sufficiently close together, when the vein wall collapses around the primary lead electrodes, the electrode at the distal end of the secondary lead can also come into contact with the a portion of the vein wall so that an RF field is created between the primary electrodes 34 and the secondary electrode 35.

The catheter 10 is pulled back to ensure apposition between the electrodes at the distal ends of the leads and the vein wall. When the catheter 10 is being pulled back, the primary-lead electrodes 34 remain in apposition with the vein wall 54 while the secondary-lead electrode 35 comes in contact with the portion of the vein wall previously collapsed by the primary-lead electrodes 34. RF energy passes through the venous tissue between the primary-lead electrodes 34 and the secondary-lead electrode 35. Ligation as the catheter is being retracted produces a lengthy occlusion which is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization than an acute point occlusion.

In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 35 remains neutral, while the primary leads 30 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form RF fields substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein. The thermal effect produced by those RF fields along the axial length of the vein wall causes the vein wall to collapse around the primary-lead electrodes. Upon collapse of the vein wall, the secondary-lead electrode is charged to have the same polarity as that of the primary-lead electrodes. The electrode device is retracted as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall. As previously described, the electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters apart along the circumference of the vein, which defines the target vein diameter for a designed electrode catheter. Where the electrodes are substantially evenly spaced in a substantially symmetrical arrangement, and the spacing between the electrodes is maintained, a symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion.

As shown in FIG. 14, after the electrodes 34 come into apposition with the vein wall (FIG. 12), and before the

18

energy is applied to ligate the vein (FIG. 13), an external tourniquet, such as an elastic compressive wrap or an inflatable bladder with a window transparent to ultrasound, is used to compress the anatomy, such as a leg, surrounding the structure to reduce the diameter of the vein. Although the compressive force being applied by the tourniquet may effectively ligate the vein, or otherwise occlude the vein by flattening the vein, for certain veins, this compressive force will not fully occlude the vein. A fixed diameter electrode catheter in this instance would not be effective. The electrodes 34 which are expanded outward by the formed leads 30 can accommodate this situation.

The reduction in vein diameter assists in pre-shaping the vein to prepare the vein to be molded to a ligated state. The use of an external tourniquet also exsanguinates the vein and blood is forced away from the treatment site. Coagulation of blood during treatment can be avoided by this procedure. Energy is applied from the electrodes to the exsanguinated vein, and the vein is molded to a sufficiently reduced diameter to achieve ligation. The external tourniquet can remain in place to facilitate healing.

The catheter can be pulled back during the application of RF energy to ligate an extensive section of a vein. In doing so, instead of a single point where the diameter of the vein has been reduced, an extensive section of the vein has been painted by the RF energy from the catheter. Retracting the catheter in this manner produces a lengthy occlusion which is less susceptible to recanalization. The combined use of the primary and secondary electrodes can effectively produce a reduced diameter along an extensive length of the vein. The catheter can be moved while the tourniquet is compressing the vein, or after the tourniquet is removed.

Where the catheter includes a fluid delivery lumen, fluid can be delivered to the vein before RF energy is applied to the vein. The delivered fluid displaces blood from the treatment site to ensure that blood is not present at the treatment site, even after the tourniquet compresses the vein.

Where the tourniquet is an inflatable bladder with a window transparent to ultrasound, an ultrasound transducer is used to monitor the flattening or reduction of the vein diameter from the compressive force being applied by the inflating bladder. The window can be formed from polyurethane, or a stand-off of gel contained between a polyurethane pouch. A gel can be applied to the window to facilitate ultrasound imaging of the vein by the transducer. Ultrasound visualization through the window allows the operator to locate the desired venous treatment area, and to determine when the vein has been effectively ligated or occluded. Ultrasound visualization assists in monitoring any pre-shaping of the vein in preparation of being molded into a ligated state by the thermal effect produced by the RF energy from the electrodes.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section, the actuator causes the leads 30 to return to the interior of the outer sheath 12. Once the leads 30 are within the outer sheath 12, the catheter 10 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated.

The description of the component parts discussed above are for a catheter to be used in a vein ranging in size from 2 mm (0.08 in) to 10 mm (0.4 in) in diameter. It is to be understood that these dimensions do not limit the scope of the invention and are merely exemplary in nature. The dimensions of the component parts may be changed to configure a catheter 10 that may used in various-sized veins or other anatomical structures.

Although described above as positively charged, negatively charged, or as a positive conductor or negative

US 6,769,433 B2

19

conductor, these terms are used for purposes of illustration only. These terms are generally meant to refer to different electrode potentials and are not meant to indicate that any particular voltage is positive or negative. Furthermore, other types of energy such as light energy from fiber optics can be used to create a thermal effect in the hollow anatomical structure undergoing treatment.

While several particular forms of the invention have been illustrated and described, it will be apparent that various modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Accordingly, it is not intended that the invention be limited, except as by the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method of applying energy to a vein to cause the vein to durably assume a reduced diameter, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end into a vein having an inner wall;

pre-shaping the vein such that the inner wall of the vein is brought toward the working end of the catheter so as to reduce the diameter of the vein;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the vein so as to cause the vein to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping the inner wall of the vein toward the working end of the catheter;

moving the catheter along the vein during the step of applying energy.

2. The method of claim 1 wherein a lengthy occlusion is formed along the area of the vein in which the catheter is moved.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of pre-shaping the vein includes the step of compressing the vein at the location of the working end of the catheter.

4. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the vein where the working end of the catheter is located.

5. The method of claim 4 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering saline to the vein.

6. The method of claim 4 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering dielectric fluid to the vein.

7. The method of claim 4 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering heparin to the vein.

8. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

9. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

10. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

11. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

12. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of monitoring the reduced diameter of the vein during the step of pre-shaping the vein.

13. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the working end of the catheter in the vein during the step of applying energy.

14. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure to cause the hollow anatomical structure to durably assume a reduced diameter, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end into a hollow anatomical structure having an inner wall;

pre-shaping the hollow anatomical structure such that the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure is brought

20

toward the working end of the catheter so as to reduce the diameter of the hollow anatomical structure, wherein the working end of the catheter is in apposition with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the hollow anatomical structure so as to cause the hollow anatomical structure to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping;

moving the catheter along the hollow anatomical structure during the step of applying energy.

15. The method of claim 14 wherein a lengthy occlusion is formed along the area of the hollow anatomical structure in which the catheter is moved during the step of applying energy.

16. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of pre-shaping the hollow anatomical structure includes the step of compressing the hollow anatomical structure at the location of the working end of the catheter.

17. The method of claim 14 further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the hollow anatomical structure where the working end of the catheter is located.

18. The method of claim 17 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering saline.

19. The method of claim 17 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering dielectric fluid.

20. The method of claim 17 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering heparin.

21. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

22. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

23. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

24. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

25. The method of claim 14 further comprising the step of monitoring the reduced diameter of the hollow anatomical structure during the step of pre-shaping.

26. The method of claim 14 further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the working end of the catheter in the hollow anatomical structure during the step of applying energy.

27. A method of applying energy to a vein to cause the vein to durably assume a reduced diameter, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end into a vein having an inner wall;

pre-shaping the vein such that the inner wall of the vein is brought toward the working end of the catheter so as to reduce the diameter of the vein, wherein the working end of the catheter is in apposition with the inner wall of the vein;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the vein so as to cause the vein to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping;

moving the catheter along the vein during the step of applying energy, wherein a lengthy occlusion is formed along the area of the vein in which the catheter is moved during the step of applying energy.

28. The method of claim 27 further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the vein where the working end of the catheter is located.

29. The method of claim 28 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering saline to the vein.



US 6,769,433 B2

21

30. The method of claim 28 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering dielectric fluid to the vein.

31. The method of claim 28 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering heparin to the vein.

32. The method of claim 27 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

33. The method of claim 27 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

34. The method of claim 27 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

35. The method of claim 27 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

36. The method of claim 27 further comprising the step of monitoring the reduced diameter of the vein during the step of pre-shaping.

37. The method of claim 27 wherein the step of pre-shaping the vein includes the step of compressing the vein at the location of the working end of the catheter.

38. The method of claim 27 further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the working end of the catheter in the vein during the step of applying energy.

39. A method of applying energy to a vein to cause the vein to durably assume a reduced diameter, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end into a vein having an inner wall;

pre-shaping the vein such that the inner wall of the vein is brought toward the working end of the catheter so as to reduce the diameter of the vein;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the vein so as to cause the vein to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping;

moving the catheter to a new location along the vein after the step of applying energy;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the new location along the vein so as to cause the vein to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping.

40. The method of claim 39 wherein a lengthy occlusion is formed along the area of the vein in which the catheter is moved.

41. The method of claim 39 wherein the step of pre-shaping the vein includes the step of compressing the vein at the location of the working end of the catheter.

42. The method of claim 39 further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the vein where the working end of the catheter is located.

43. The method of claim 42 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering saline to the vein.

44. The method of claim 42 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering dielectric fluid to the vein.

45. The method of claim 42 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering heparin to the vein.

46. The method of claim 39 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

47. The method of claim 39 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

48. The method of claim 39 the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

49. The method of claim 39 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

22

50. The method of claim 39 further comprising the step of monitoring the reduced diameter of the vein during the step of pre-shaping.

51. The method of claim 39 further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the working end of the catheter in the vein during the steps of applying energy.

52. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure to cause the hollow anatomical structure to durably assume a reduced diameter, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end into a hollow anatomical structure having an inner wall;

pre-shaping the hollow anatomical structure such that the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure is brought toward the working end of the catheter so as to reduce the diameter of the hollow anatomical structure, wherein the working end of the catheter is in apposition with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the hollow anatomical structure so as to cause the hollow anatomical structure to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping;

moving the catheter to a new location along the hollow anatomical structure after the step of applying energy;

applying energy from the working end of the catheter to the new location along the hollow anatomical structure so as to cause the hollow anatomical structure to durably assume a diameter at least as small as the reduced diameter achieved in the step of pre-shaping.

53. The method of claim 52 wherein a lengthy occlusion is formed along the area of the hollow anatomical structure in which the catheter is moved.

54. The method of claim 52 wherein the step of pre-shaping the hollow anatomical structure includes the step of compressing the hollow anatomical structure at the location of the working end of the catheter.

55. The method of claim 52 further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the hollow anatomical structure where the working end of the catheter is located.

56. The method of claim 55 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering saline.

57. The method of claim 55 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering dielectric fluid.

58. The method of claim 55 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering heparin.

59. The method of claim 52 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

60. The method of claim 52 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

61. The method of claim 52 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

62. The method of claim 52 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

63. The method of claim 52 further comprising the step of monitoring the reduced diameter of the hollow anatomical structure during the step of pre-shaping.

64. The method of claim 52 further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the working end of the catheter in the hollow anatomical structure during the steps of applying energy.

\* \* \* \* \*

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
**CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION**

PATENT NO. : 6,769,433 B2  
DATED : August 3, 2004  
INVENTOR(S) : Farley et al.

Page 1 of 1

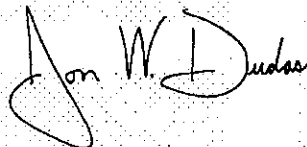
It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 21,

Line 62, insert -- wherein -- after "claim 39".

Signed and Sealed this

Twenty-first Day of June, 2005

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Jon W. Dudas", is written over a rectangular area with a light gray dot grid background.

JON W. DUDAS

*Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office*

# **EXHIBIT 3**





US006258084B1

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Goldman et al.**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 6,258,084 B1**  
 (45) **Date of Patent:** **Jul. 10, 2001**

(54) **METHOD FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION**

(75) **Inventors:** Mitchel P. Goldman, La Jolla, CA (US); Robert A. Weiss, Baltimore, MD (US); Arthur W. Zikorus, San Jose, CA (US); James G. Chandler, Boulder, CO (US)

(73) **Assignee:** Vnus Medical Technologies, Inc., Sunnyvale, CA (US)

(\*) **Notice:** Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) **Appl. No.:** 09/267,127

(22) **Filed:** Mar. 10, 1999

#### Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation-in-part of application No. 08/927,251, filed on Sep. 11, 1997, and a continuation-in-part of application No. 09/138,472, filed on Aug. 21, 1998.

(51) **Int. Cl.** <sup>7</sup> ..... A61B 18/04

(52) **U.S. Cl.** ..... 606/32; 128/898

(58) **Field of Search** ..... 606/27-29, 31, 606/32, 34, 41, 42; 607/1, 2, 96, 98, 100-102, 104-106; 604/49; 128/898

(56) **References Cited**

#### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

373,339	11/1887	Hamillon .	
3,301,258	1/1967	Werner et al. .	
5,437,664 *	8/1995	Cohen et al. ....	606/42
5,643,257	7/1997	Cohen et al. .	
5,709,224	1/1998	Behl .	

(List continued on next page.)

#### FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

2 333 964	8/1999	(GB) .
WO 98/55072	12/1997	(WO) .

#### OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Watts, Endovenous Diathermy Destruction of Internal Saphenous, British Medical Journal, Oct. 7, 1972, p. 53.

O'Reilly, Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis as a Unit of the Armamentarium for the Attack on Varicose Veins, The Medical Journal of Australia, Jun. 1, 1974, p. 900.

O'Reilly, Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins, The Australian, New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 47, No. 3, Jun. 1977, pp. 393-395.

O'Reilly, A Technique of Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins, The Australian, New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 51, No. 4, Aug. 1981, pp. 379-382.

(List continued on next page.)

*Primary Examiner*—Michael Peffley

*Assistant Examiner*—R. Kearney

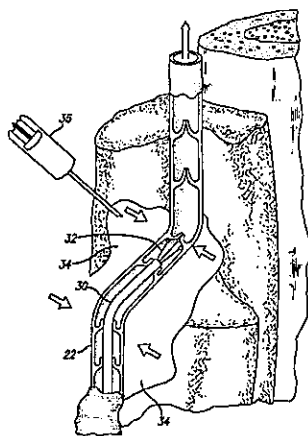
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Fulwider Patton Lee & Utecht, LLP

(57)

#### ABSTRACT

An electrode catheter is introduced into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein, and is positioned at a treatment site within the structure. Tumescent fluid is injected into the tissue surrounding the treatment site to produce tumescence of the surrounding tissue which then compresses the vein. The solution may include an anesthetic, and may further include a vasoconstrictive drug that shrinks blood vessels. The tumescent swelling in the surrounding tissue causes the hollow anatomical structure to become compressed, thereby exsanguinating the treatment site. Energy is applied by an electrode catheter in apposition with the vein wall to create a heating effect. The heating effect causes the hollow anatomical structure to become molded and durably assume the compressed dimensions caused by the tumescent technique. The electrode catheter can be moved within the structure so as to apply energy to a large section of the hollow anatomical structure. In a further aspect, the location of the electrodes is determined by impedance monitoring. Also, temperature sensors at the treatment site are averaged to determine the site temperature.

39 Claims, 6 Drawing Sheets



US 6,258,084 B1

Page 2

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,810,804 9/1998 Gough et al. .  
5,817,092 10/1998 Behl .  
5,827,268 10/1998 Laufer .  
5,863,290 1/1999 Gough et al. .  
5,868,740 2/1999 LeVeen et al. .  
6,036,687 \* 3/2000 Laufer et al. .... 606/27

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Cragg et al., Endovascular Diathermic Vessel Occlusion,  
Diagnostic Radiology, 144: 303-308, Jul. 1982.

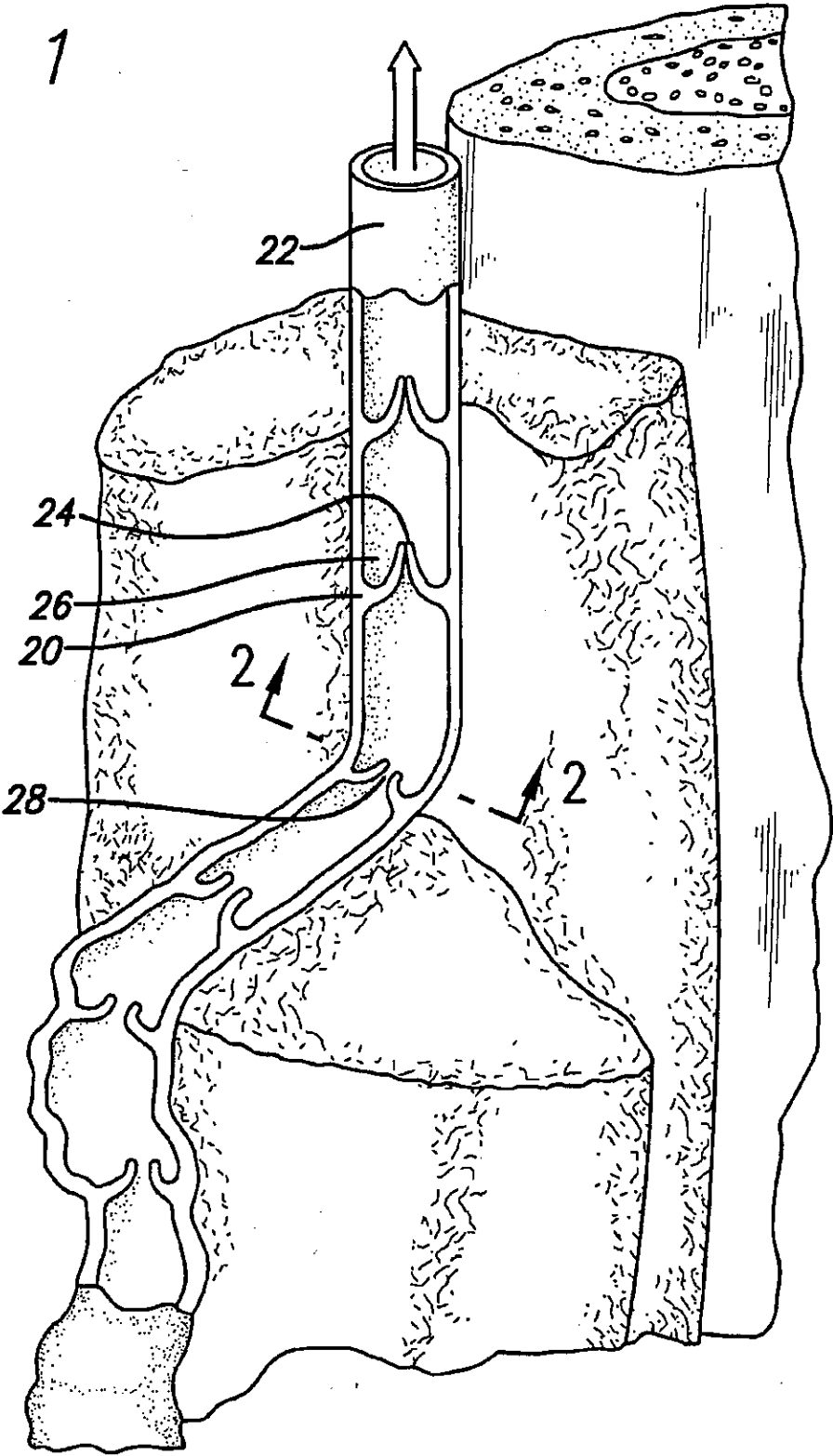
van Bemmelen, Quantitative Segmental Evaluation of  
Venous Valvular Reflux with Duplex Ultrasound Scanning,  
J. Vasc. Surg. 1989, 10:425-431.

Partsch, Compression Therapy of the Legs, J.Dermatol.  
Surg. 1991; 17:79-805.

Sarin et al., Mechanism of Action of External Compression  
on Venous Function, J. Surg., vol. 79, No. 6, Jun. 1992.

\* cited by examiner

FIG. 1

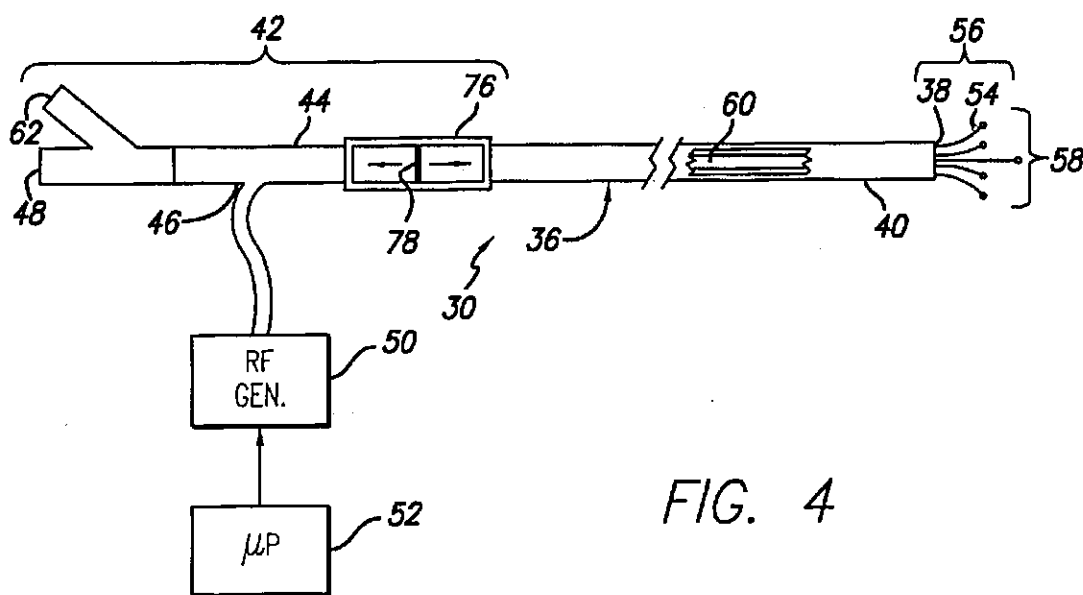
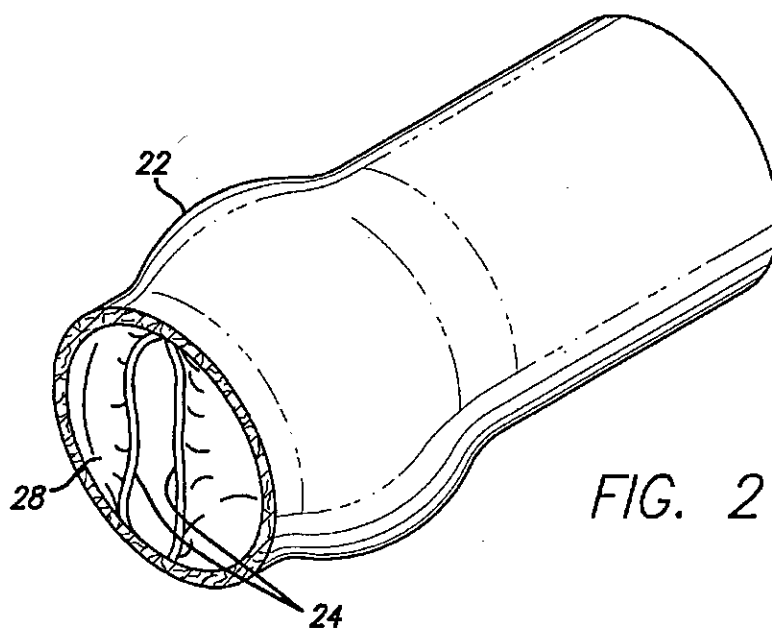


U.S. Patent

Jul. 10, 2001

Sheet 2 of 6

US 6,258,084 B1



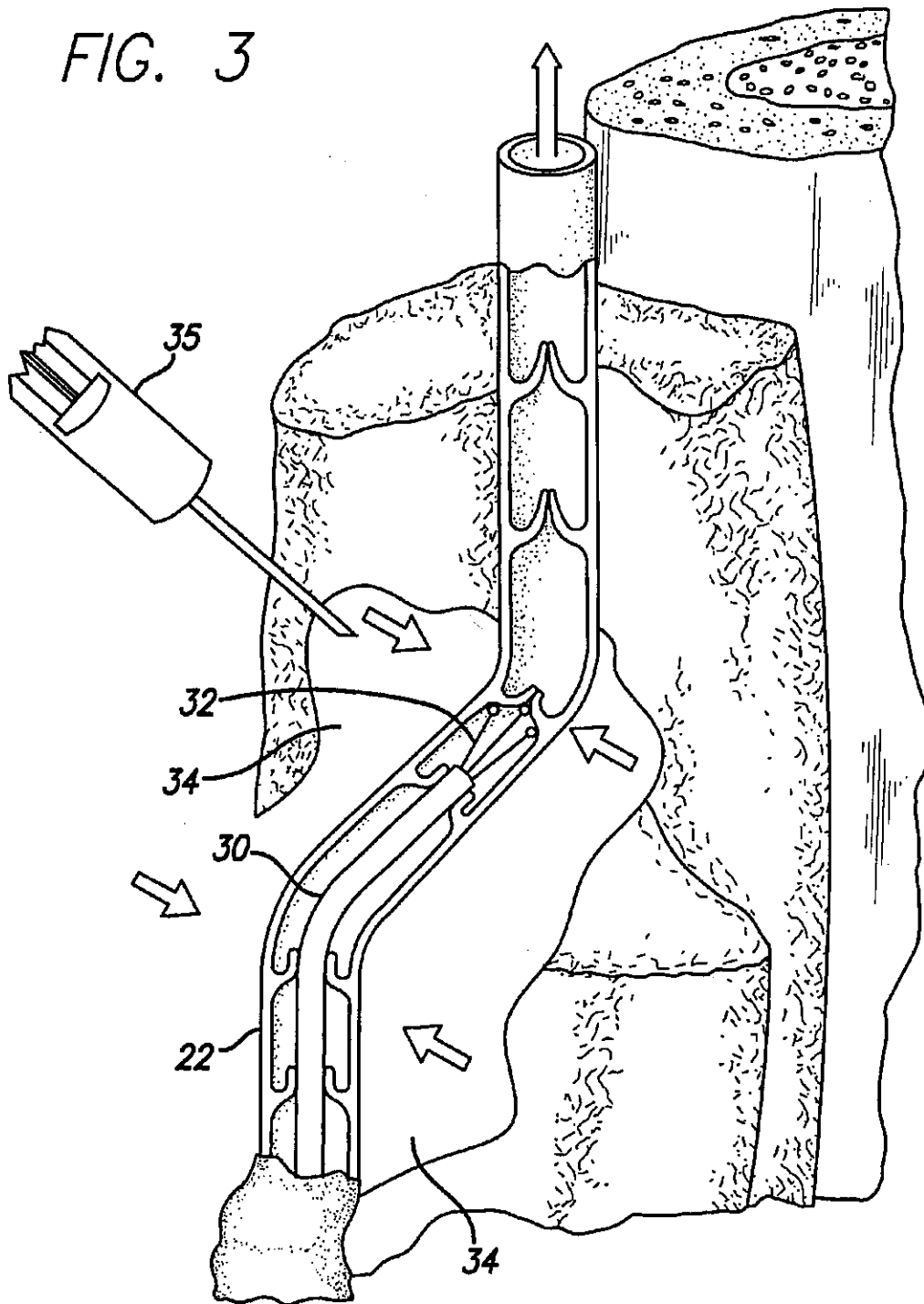
U.S. Patent

Jul. 10, 2001

Sheet 3 of 6

US 6,258,084 B1

FIG. 3

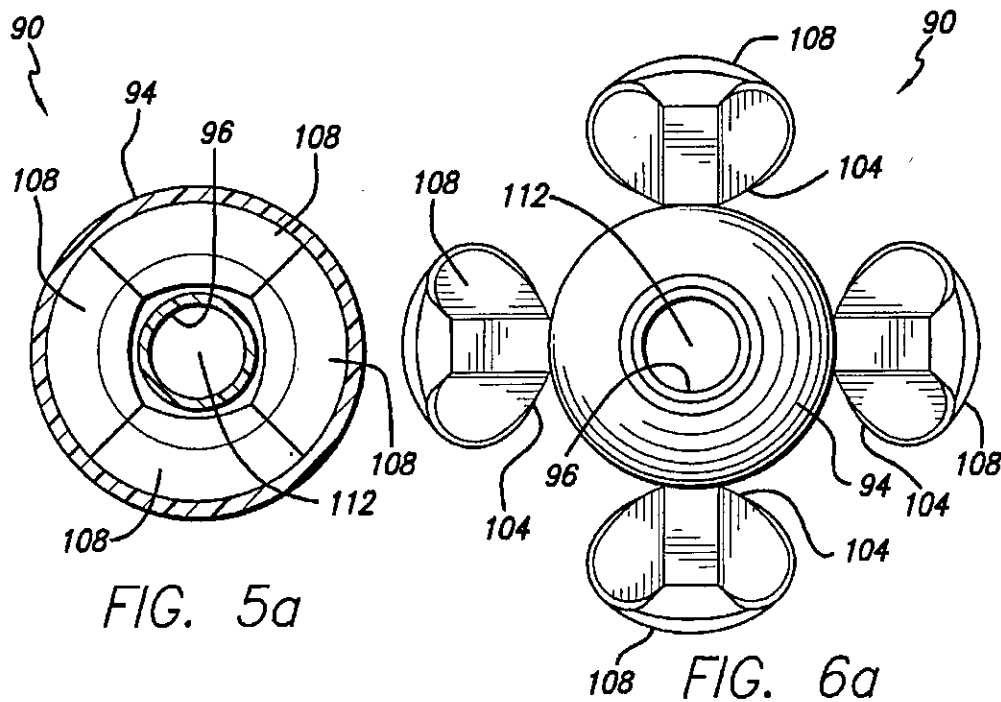
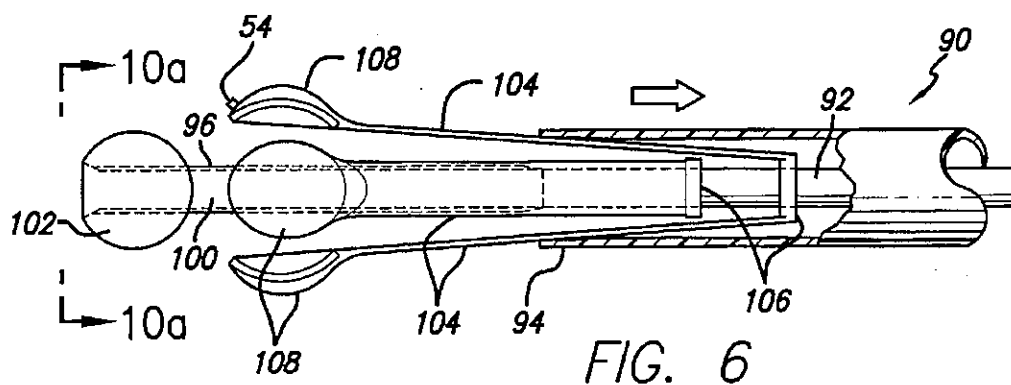
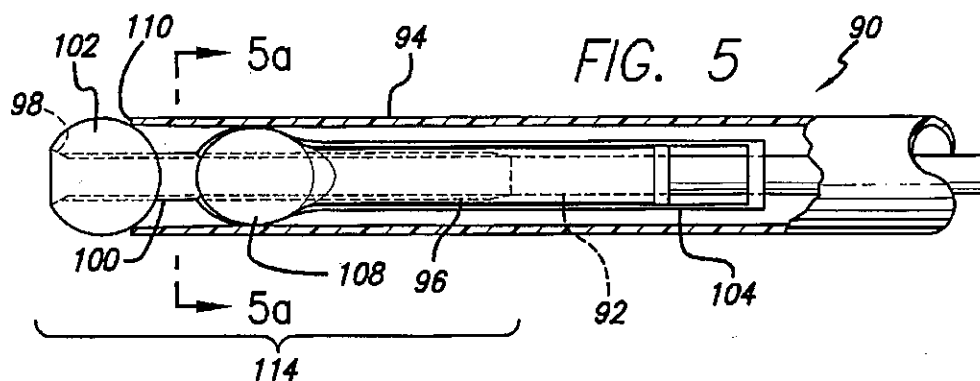


U.S. Patent

Jul. 10, 2001

Sheet 4 of 6

US 6,258,084 B1



U.S. Patent

Jul. 10, 2001

Sheet 5 of 6

US 6,258,084 B1

FIG. 7

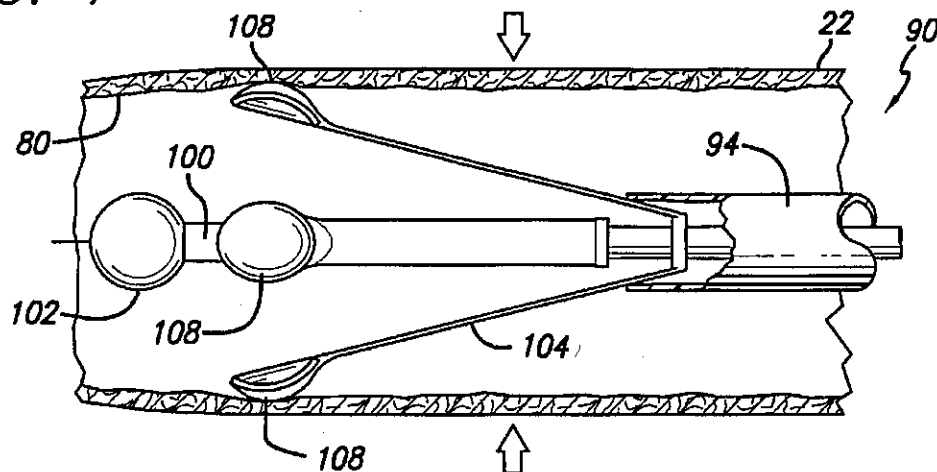


FIG. 8

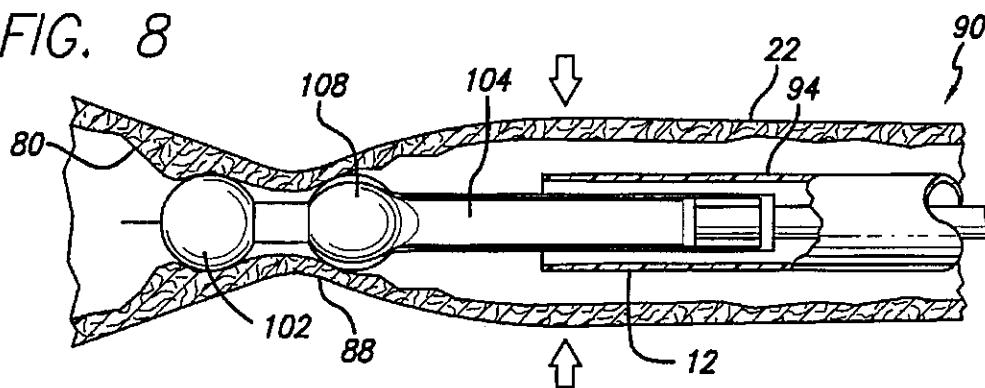
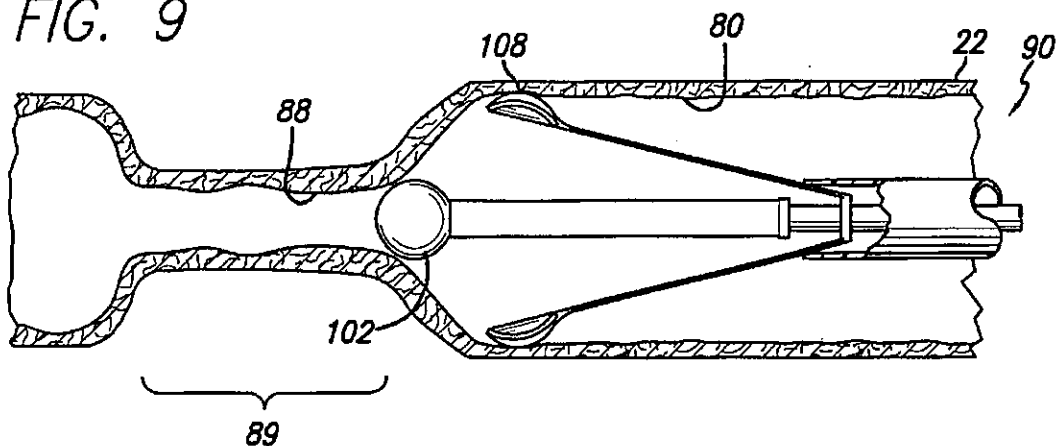
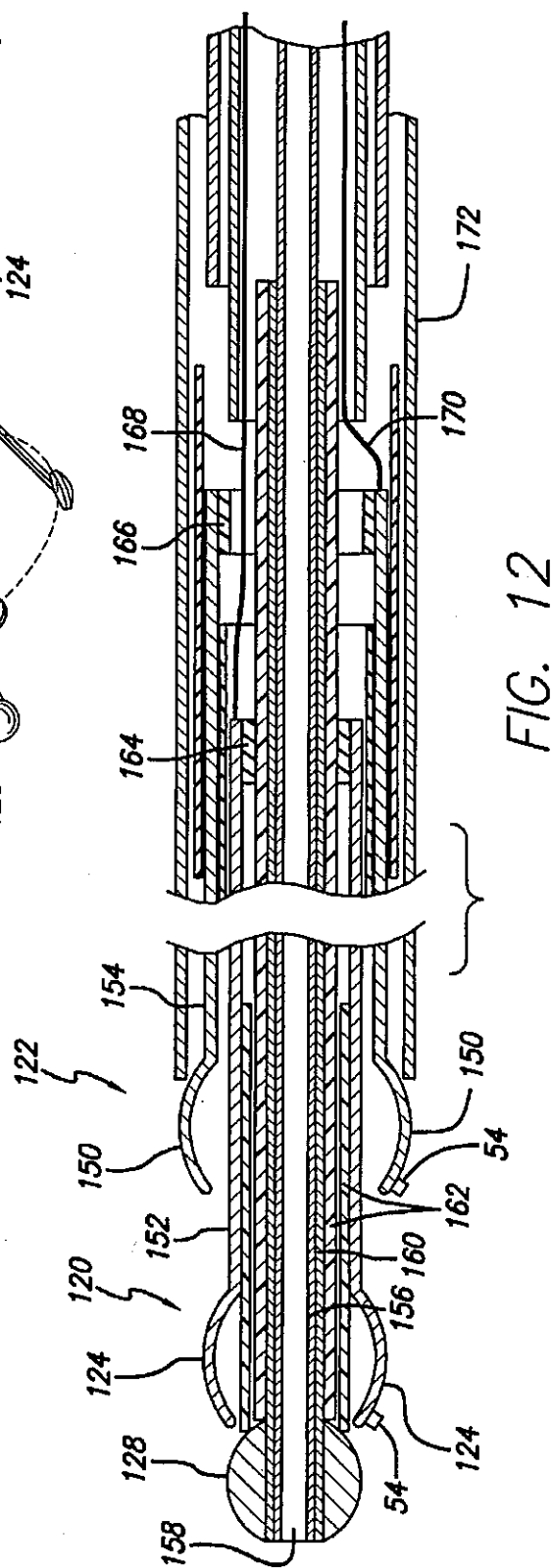
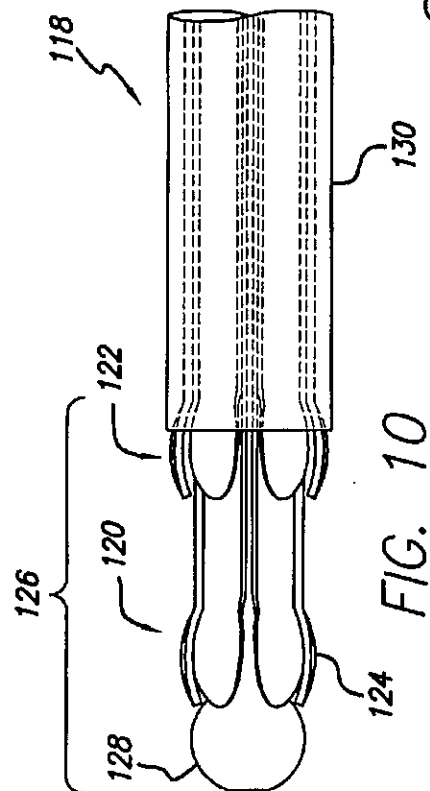
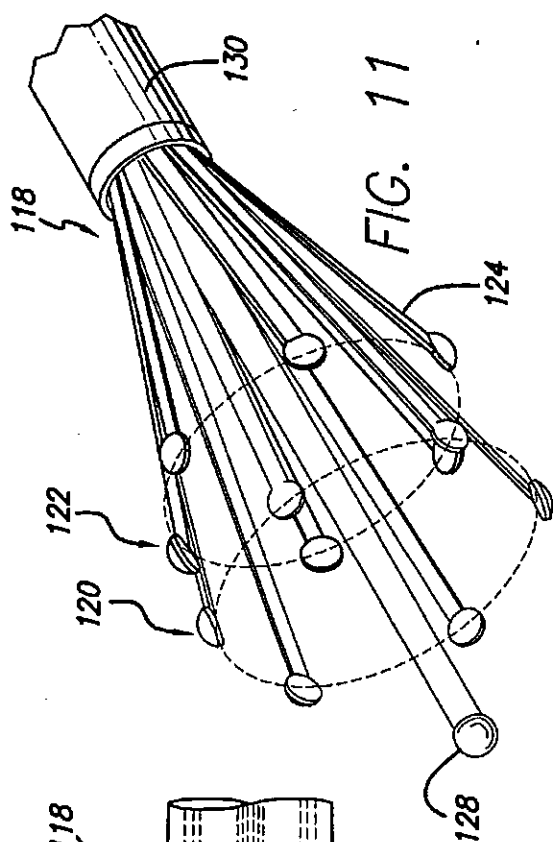


FIG. 9







US 6,258,084 B1

1

# METHOD FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION

This is a continuation-in-part of co-pending application Ser. No. 08/927,251 filed on Sep. 11, 1997 and co-pending application Ser. No. 09/138,472 filed on Aug. 21, 1998.

## BACKGROUND

The invention relates generally to a method and apparatus for applying energy to shrink a hollow anatomical structure, such as a fallopian tube or a vein, including but not limited to, superficial and perforator veins, hemorrhoids, and esophageal varices. In some particular aspects, the invention relates to a method for compressing an anatomical structure prior to the application of energy and apparatus including an electrode device having multiple leads for applying energy to the compressed structure to cause it to durably assume its compressed form.

The human venous system of the lower limbs consists essentially of the superficial venous system and the deep venous system with perforating veins connecting the two systems. The superficial system includes the long or great saphenous vein and the short saphenous vein. The deep venous system includes the anterior and posterior tibial veins which unite to form the popliteal vein, which in turn becomes the femoral vein when joined by the short saphenous vein.

The venous system contains numerous one-way valves for directing blood flow back to the heart such as those valves 20 located in the vein 22 shown in FIG. 1. The arrow leading out the top of the vein represents the antegrade flow of blood back to the heart. Venous valves are usually bicuspid valves, with each cusp 24 forming a sack or reservoir 26 for blood which, under retrograde blood pressure, forces the free surfaces of the cusps together to prevent retrograde flow of the blood and allows only antegrade blood flow to the heart. Competent venous valves prevent retrograde flow as blood is pushed forward through the vein lumen and back to the heart. When an incompetent valve 28 is in the flow path, the valve is unable to close because the cusps do not form a proper seal and retrograde flow of the blood cannot be stopped. When a venous valve fails, increased strain and pressure occur within the lower venous sections and overlying tissues, sometimes leading to additional valvular failure. Incompetent valves may result from the stretching of dilated veins. As the valves fail, increased pressure is imposed on the lower veins and the lower valves of the vein, which in turn exacerbates the failure of these lower valves. A cross-sectional perspective view of a dilated vein with an incompetent valve 28 taken along lines 2—2 of FIG. 1 is illustrated in FIG. 2. The valve cusps 24 can experience some separation at the commissure due to the thinning and stretching of the vein wall at the cusps. Two venous conditions which often result from valve failure are varicose veins and more symptomatic chronic venous insufficiency.

The varicose vein condition includes dilation and tortuosity of the superficial veins of the lower limbs, resulting in unsightly discoloration, pain, swelling, and possibly ulceration. Varicose veins often involve incompetence of one or more venous valves, which allow reflux of blood within the superficial system. This can also worsen deep venous reflux and perforator reflux. Current treatments of vein insufficiency include surgical procedures such as vein stripping, ligation, and occasionally, vein-segment transplant.

Chronic venous insufficiency involves an aggravated condition of varicose veins which may be caused by degenera-

2

tive weakness in the vein valve segment, or by hydrodynamic forces acting on the tissues of the body, such as the legs, ankles, and feet. As the valves in the veins fail, the hydrostatic pressure increases on the next venous valves down, causing those veins to dilate. As this continues, more venous valves will eventually fail. As they fail, the effective height of the column of blood above the feet and ankles grows, and the weight and hydrostatic pressure exerted on the tissues of the ankle and foot increases. When the weight of that column reaches a critical point as a result of the valve failures, ulcerations of the ankle begin to form, which start deep and eventually come to the surface. These ulcerations do not heal easily because of poor venous circulation due to valvular incompetence in the deep venous system and other vein systems.

Other related venous conditions include dilated hemorrhoids and esophageal varices. Pressure and dilation of the hemorrhoid venous plexus may cause internal hemorrhoids to dilate and/or prolapse and be forced through the anal opening. If a hemorrhoid remains prolapsed, considerable discomfort, including itching and bleeding, may result. The venous return from these prolapsed hemorrhoids becomes obstructed by the anal sphincters, which gives rise to a strangulated hemorrhoid. Thromboses result where the blood within the prolapsed vein becomes clotted. This extremely painful condition can cause edema and inflammation.

Varicose veins called esophageal varices can form in the venous system with submucosa of the lower esophagus, and bleeding can occur from the dilated veins. Bleeding or hemorrhaging may result from esophageal varices, which can be difficult to stop and, if untreated, could develop into a life threatening condition. Such varices erode easily, and lead to a massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage.

Ligation of a fallopian tube (tubal ligation) for sterilization or other purposes is typically performed by laparoscopy. A doctor severs the fallopian tube or tubes and ties the ends. External cauterization or clamps may also be used. General or regional anesthetic must be used. All of the above are performed from outside the fallopian tube.

Hemorrhoids and esophageal varices may be alleviated by intra-luminal ligation. As used herein, "ligation" or "intra-luminal ligation" comprises the occlusion, collapse, or closure of a lumen or hollow anatomical structure by the application of energy from within the lumen or structure. As used herein, "ligation" or "intra-luminal ligation" includes electro-ligation. In the case of fallopian tube ligation, it would be desirable to perform the ligation from within the fallopian tube itself (intra-fallopian tube) to avoid the trauma associated with external methods.

Ligation involves the cauterization or coagulation of a lumen using energy, such as that applied through an electrode device. An electrode device is introduced into the lumen and positioned so that it contacts the lumen wall. Once properly positioned, RF energy is applied to the wall by the electrode device thereby causing the wall to shrink in cross-sectional diameter. In the case of a vein, a reduction in cross-sectional diameter of the vein, as for example from 5 mm (0.2 in) to 1 mm (0.04 in), significantly reduces the flow of blood through a lumen and results in an effective occlusion. Although not required for effective occlusion or ligation, the vein wall may completely collapse thereby resulting in a full-lumen obstruction that blocks the flow of blood through the vein. Likewise, a fallopian tube may collapse sufficiently to effect a sterilization of the patient.

One apparatus for performing ligation includes a tubular shaft having an electrode device attached at the distal tip.

US 6,258,084 B1

3

Running through the shaft, from the distal end to the proximal end, are electrical leads. At the proximal end of the shaft, the leads terminate at an electrical connector, while at the distal end of the shaft the leads are connected to the electrode device. The electrical connector provides the interface between the leads and a power source, typically an RF generator. The RF generator operates under the guidance of a control device, usually a microprocessor.

The ligation apparatus may be operated in either a monopolar or bipolar configuration. In the monopolar configuration, the electrode device consists of an electrode that is either positively or negatively charged. A return path for the current passing through the electrode is provided externally from the body, as for example by placing the patient in physical contact with a large low-impedance pad. The current flows between the ligation device and low impedance pad through the patient. In a bipolar configuration, the electrode device consists of a pair of electrodes having different potentials (such as a pair of oppositely-charged electrodes) of approximately equal size, separated from each other, such as by a dielectric material or by a spatial relationship. Accordingly, in the bipolar mode, the return path for current is provided by an electrode or electrodes of the electrode device itself. The current flows from one electrode, through the tissue, and returns by way of the another electrode.

To protect against tissue damage, i.e., charring, due to cauterization caused by overheating, a temperature sensing device is typically attached to the electrode device, although it may be located elsewhere. The temperature sensing device may be a thermocouple that monitors the temperature of the venous tissue. The thermocouple interfaces with the RF generator and the controller through the shaft and provides electrical signals to the controller which monitors the temperature and adjusts the energy applied to the tissue through the electrode device accordingly.

The overall effectiveness of a ligation apparatus is largely dependent on the electrode device contained within the apparatus. Monopolar and bipolar electrode devices that comprise solid devices having a fixed shape and size can limit the effectiveness of the ligating apparatus for several reasons. Firstly, a fixed-size electrode device typically contacts the vein wall at only one point or a limited arc on the circumference or inner diameter of the vein wall. As a result, the application of RF energy is highly concentrated within the contacting venous tissue, while the flow of RF current through the remainder of the venous tissue is disproportionately weak. Accordingly, the regions of the vein wall near the area of contact collapse at a faster rate than other regions of the vein wall, resulting in non-uniform shrinkage of the vein lumen. Furthermore, the overall strength of the occlusion may be inadequate and the lumen may eventually reopen. To avoid an inadequate occlusion, RF energy must be applied for an extended period of time so that the current flows through the tissue, including through the tissue not in contact with the electrode, generating thermal energy and causing the tissue to shrink sufficiently. Extended applications of energy have a greater possibility of increasing the temperature of the blood to an unacceptable level and may result in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable. Furthermore, it is possible for the undesirable coagulum to form when utilizing an expandable electrode as well. This problem can be prevented by exsanguination of the vein prior to the treatment, as well as through the use of temperature-regulated power delivery. As used herein, "exsanguination" comprises the removal of all or some significant portion of blood in a particular area.

4

Secondly, the effectiveness of a ligating apparatus having a fixed-size electrode device is limited to certain sized veins. An attempt to ligate a vein having a diameter that is substantially greater than the fixed-size electrode device can result in not only non-uniform heating of the vein wall as just described, but also insufficient shrinkage of the vein diameter. The greater the diameter of the vein relative to the diameter of the electrode device, the weaker the energy applied to the vein wall at points distant from the point of electrode contact. Also, larger diameter veins must shrink a larger percentage for effective occlusion to occur. Accordingly, the vein wall is likely to not completely collapse prior to the venous tissue becoming over-cauterized at the point of electrode contact. While coagulation as such may initially occlude the vein, such occlusion may only be temporary in that the coagulated blood may eventually dissolve recanalizing the vein. One solution for this inadequacy is an apparatus having interchangeable electrode devices with various diameters. Another solution is to have a set of catheters having different sizes so that one with the correct size for the diameter of the target vein will be at hand when needed. Such solutions, however, are both economically inefficient and can be tedious to use. It is desirable to use a single catheter device that is usable with a large range of sizes of lumina.

A technique of reducing the diameter of the lumen of a vein at least close to the final desired diameter before applying energy to the vein has been found to aid in the efficiency of these types of procedures. The pre-reduction in vein diameter assists in pre-shaping the vein to be molded into a ligated state. The compression also exsanguinates the vein and forces blood away from the treatment site, thus preventing coagulation. One valuable technique employed is that of compressing the vein contained within a limb by applying external hydraulic pressure, via a pressure tourniquet, to the limb. Unfortunately there are some areas of the body to which a pressure tourniquet cannot be applied, such as the sapheno-femoral junction, which is above the thigh proximate the groin area. Furthermore, there are sites where a pressure tourniquet may be ineffective such as: the popliteal junction and other areas around the knee; and the ankle area (typically the posterior arch vein and some of the lower coxett perforators).

There exists a technique referred to as tumescent anesthesia that has been used in connection with liposuction procedures. The word "tumescent" means swollen or firm. This technique is accomplished by subcutaneously delivering into target fatty tissue a large volume of saline solution containing diluted Lidocaine and Epinephrine (adrenaline), a vasoconstrictive drug. The injected area then becomes locally anesthetized, and the adrenaline temporarily constricts the capillaries and other blood vessels. The tumescence-inducing fluid, or "tumescent fluid" is injected under pressure which causes the target fatty tissue to become swollen and firm. The tumescent fluid is typically pumped into the pocket of fat in order to numb the area, loosen the fat, and constrict the blood vessels to minimize bleeding or bruising in a liposuction procedure. The anesthetic and other agents in the tumescent solution should be allowed sufficient time to diffuse and take full effect throughout the target tissue. After surgery, patients may leave without assistance, and often return to their regular routine within several days. With the tumescent technique, postoperative discomfort is significantly reduced. The local anesthesia often remains in the treated tissue for 16 hours after surgery. Employing a technique of utilizing tumescent anesthesia in conjunction with ligation or radial lumen shrinkage less than ligation may provide benefits.

US 6,258,084 B1

5

Although described above in terms of a vein, the concepts are generally applicable to other hollow anatomical structures in the body as well. The above description has been generally confined to veins in consideration of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

Hence those skilled in the art have recognized a need for an improved method and apparatus that can be used on areas of the body to shrink and ligate hollow anatomical structures. A need has also been recognized for an improved method and apparatus to pre-compress and exsanguinate a hollow anatomical structure while providing anesthetic and insulation benefits during the radial shrinkage of the hollow anatomical structure. The invention fulfills these needs and others.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to a method and apparatus for applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure such as a vein, to shrink the structure. In a more detailed aspect, the invention is directed to pre-compressing and exsanguinating a hollow anatomical structure while providing anesthetic and insulation benefits during a procedure of shrinking the hollow anatomical structure.

In another aspect of the present invention, a method comprises providing fluid to tissue surrounding a hollow anatomical structure to induce tumescence of the tissue and consequent compression of the hollow anatomical structure during a procedure of applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure from within the structure. In a more detailed aspect, the method comprises introducing into the hollow anatomical structure a catheter having a working end and at least one electrode at the working end; placing the electrode into contact with the inner wall of the pre-compressed hollow anatomical structure and applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site via the electrode until the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the pre-compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the solution into the tissue.

In another aspect in accordance with the invention, tumescent fluid is injected in the tissue surrounding the hollow anatomical structure along a selected length of the hollow anatomical structure. The electrode is then moved along a site within the selected length while continuously applying energy to result in a lengthy occlusion. In another approach, after an initial application of energy to one site internal to the hollow anatomical structure within the selected length, the electrode is moved down a given length of the hollow anatomical structure and energy is applied at that adjacent site. For the site where energy is applied, the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the pre-compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the solution into the tissue.

In a more detailed aspect, tumescent anesthesia fluid is injected or otherwise provided to tissue contiguous with a vein to compress the vein to about a desired final diameter. A catheter having an energy application device, such as expandable electrodes, is introduced internal to the vein at a site within the compressed portion of the vein and energy is applied to the internal vein wall by the application device. Sufficient energy is applied to cause the vein to durably assume the compressed diameter such that when the effects of the tumescent anesthesia fluid are dissipated, the vein retains the compressed diameter.

Alternate means to prevent coagulum formation include fluid displacement of blood at the treatment site, or exsan-

6

guination by inducing self-constriction of the vessel. In the latter, self-constriction includes, but is not limited to, intraluminal delivery of a vasoconstrictive drug. Self-constriction also aids in pre-shaping the vein for ligation, as discussed previously. If the fluid delivered to the site is a sclerosant, the ligation effects would be further enhanced.

In further aspects, energy is applied to effectively occlude the treatment site. Further, the energy application device is moved along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy so as to result in a lengthy occlusion of the treatment site. The treatment site may collapse around the energy application device as it is being moved. In yet further detail, fluid is delivered from within the hollow structure to the treatment site. This fluid may be used to exsanguinate the treatment site. Such fluid may be from the following group: saline; a vasoconstrictive agent; a sclerosing agent; a high impedance fluid; and heparin.

In another aspect, temperatures are sensed at two separate locations on the energy application device, and the temperature signals are averaged to determine the temperature at the site. In further detailed aspects, electrical energy is applied to the inner wall of the treatment site with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall. With the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall, the method further comprises the steps of applying electrical energy with the electrode to effectively occlude the treatment site at the electrode, and moving the electrode along the treatment site while maintaining the electrode in apposition with the vein wall while performing the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site so as to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site. Sufficient energy is applied to collapse the hollow anatomical structure around the energy application device as it is being moved along the treatment site to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

In yet a further aspect, apposition of the energy application device with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure is determined by monitoring the impedance experienced by the energy application device.

These and other aspects and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the following more detailed description, when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings which illustrate, by way of example, embodiments of the invention.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows a cross-sectional view of a vein having competent valves and having a dilated section with incompetent venous valves in a lower limb which are to be treated in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 2 shows a representative view of a venous section with an incompetent valve from FIG. 1 taken along lines 2—2 which is to be treated in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 3 is a cross-sectional view of the vein of FIG. 1 after the vein has been compressed, although not to full occlusion, by the injection of a tumescent anesthesia fluid in tissue surrounding the vein showing a catheter including an expandable electrode device prior to the application of energy to the vein;

FIG. 4 is a diagram of an energy application system that may be used in conjunction with the method of the present invention, depicting a partial cutaway view of the first embodiment of the catheter showing both the working end and the connecting end with an RF generator and a micro-processor connected at the connection end;



US 6,258,084 B1

7

FIG. 5 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of an embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 5a is an end view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter taken along line 5a—5a of FIG. 5;

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter of FIGS. 5 and 5a depicting the electrodes in a fully expanded position;

FIG. 6a is an end view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter taken along line 6a—6a of FIG. 6;

FIG. 7 is a cross-sectional view of a vein after the vein has been compressed, although not to full occlusion, by tumescent anesthesia fluid, the vein containing the catheter of FIG. 5 with the electrodes in apposition with the vein;

FIG. 8 is a cross-sectional view of the compressed vein containing the catheter of FIG. 5 where the vein is being ligated by the application of energy from the electrodes;

FIG. 9 is a partial cross-sectional view of the vein wall of FIG. 8 showing a lengthy effective occlusion made by moving the electrodes along the treatment site of the vein while maintaining the electrodes in apposition and continuing to apply energy to the vein wall.

FIG. 10 is a side view of an embodiment of an electrode catheter having two pluralities of longitudinally-separated expandable electrodes in a retracted condition;

FIG. 11 is a side view of the embodiment of the electrode catheter of FIG. 10 with both pluralities of the electrodes in expanded configurations; and

FIG. 12 is a partial cross-sectional view of the embodiment of an electrode catheter of FIGS. 10 and 11.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

As shown in the exemplary drawings, the invention is directed toward the intravenous treatment of veins using a catheter to deliver at least one electrode to a venous treatment site. As used herein, like reference numerals will designate similar elements in the various embodiments of the present invention to be discussed. In addition, unless otherwise noted, the term "working end" will refer to the direction toward the treatment site in the patient, and the term "connecting end" will refer to the direction away from the treatment site in the patient. The invention will be described in relation to the treatment of the venous system of the lower limbs. It is to be understood, however, that the invention is not limited thereto and may be employed intraluminally to treat veins in other areas of the body such as hemorrhoids, esophageal varices, and venous-drainage-impotence of the penis. Furthermore, although the invention will be described as using RF energy from the electrode, it is to be understood that other forms of energy such as microwaves, ultrasound, direct current, circulating heated fluid, radiant light, and lasers can be used, and that the thermal energy generated from a resistive coil or curie point element may be used as well.

Turning to FIG. 3, one preferred method of the present invention can be performed using the catheter 30 to deliver an expandable electrode device 32 (partially shown) to a venous treatment site in order to ligate the vein. Instead of compressing the tissue surrounding the treatment site via a pressure tourniquet, a tumescent anesthesia technique can be used to inject a dilute anesthetic and vasoconstrictive solution into the tissue surrounding the vein to be treated. The

8

tumescent solution preferably includes mostly saline solution, with a local anesthetic such as Lidocaine, and a vasoconstrictive drug such as Epinephrine. The tumescent solution causes the surrounding tissue 34 to become swollen which compresses the vein 22, as indicated by the arrows, close to occlusion (in this case) or to occlusion. Sufficient tumescent solution should be delivered into the tissue surrounding the vein to compress and exsanguinate the vein. Before injecting the tumescent solution, the catheter 30 is placed within the vein at the treatment site, with the expandable electrode device retracted.

The solution is typically infused with a peristaltic pump. However, 60 cc or 100 cc syringes 35 can be used. Another alternative is an IV bag with a pressure cuff. Large volumes are typically delivered into the perivenal area via a large cannula. Sites are typically located 10 cm apart down the leg. Usually there are four or five delivery sites. The external result is a leg that appears inflated. The internal result is compressed veins plus an anesthetized leg. The expandable electrode device is then expanded into apposition with the venous tissue after compression of the vein. Energy such as high frequency RF energy is applied from the expandable electrode device to the venous tissue until the vein durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the tumescent solution into the tissue.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section or treatment site, the electrode may be retracted and the catheter moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated. Ultrasound guidance can be used to monitor the progress of the procedure.

One preferred embodiment of the catheter for delivering an expandable energy application device or expandable electrode device 56 to the venous treatment site is illustrated in FIG. 4. The catheter 30 includes an expandable energy application device 56 which in this embodiment, comprises an array of electrodes 58, an outer sheath 36 having a distal orifice 38 at its working end 40. The connector end 42 of the outer sheath is attached to a handle 44 that includes electrical connector 46. The handle additionally includes a guide wire port 48. The connector 46 is for interfacing with a power source, typically an RF generator 50, and a microprocessor controller 52. The power source and microprocessor controller are usually contained in one unit. The microprocessor controller controls the RF generator in response to external commands and data from a temperature sensor 54, such as a thermocouple, or temperature sensors that may be positioned at an intraluminal venous treatment site.

The catheter 30 includes the expandable electrode device 56 that moves in and out of the outer sheath by way of the distal orifice 38 in this embodiment, although in other embodiments the device 56 may expand from and contract into the catheter 30 at other locations. The expandable electrode device 56 includes a plurality of electrodes 58 which can be expanded by moving the outer sheath 36 relative to the electrodes. Although FIG. 4 illustrates a plurality of electrodes 58 surrounding a single central electrode, different electrode configurations may be used.

Contained within the outer sheath 36 is an inner sheath 60 or inner member as shown in the cutaway portion of FIG. 4. A fluid port 62 communicates with the interior of the outer sheath. The catheter 30 can be periodically flushed out with saline through the fluid port. The flushing fluid can travel between the outer sheath and the inner sheath. The fluid port also allows for the delivery of drug therapies. Flushing out the catheter prevents the buildup of biological fluid, such as

US 6,258,084 B1

9

blood, within the catheter. The treatment area or site of the vein can be flushed with a fluid such as saline, or a high impedance dielectric fluid, in order to evacuate blood from the treatment area of the vein so as to prevent the formation of coagulum or thrombosis. The use of a high impedance dielectric fluid can minimize unintended heating effects away from the treatment area. The dielectric fluid directs the current of RF energy toward the vein wall. In addition, a vasoconstrictive agent may be applied to shrink the vein, heparin may be applied for coagulation avoidance, and a sclerosing agent may be applied to assist in ligation. These drugs or agents may be applied before, during, or after the catheter is used to heat the vein wall.

In one preferred embodiment, the catheter 30 includes a lumen which begins at the distal tip 55, proximate the working end 40, and runs substantially along the axis of the inner member before terminating at the guide wire port 48 of the handle 44. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen of the catheter for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. Where the catheter is sized to treat smaller veins, the outer diameter of the catheter may not allow for a fluid flush between the outer sheath and the inner sheath 60. However, a fluid flush can be introduced through the guide wire port 48 in such an embodiment.

Turning again to FIG. 4, an actuator 76 controls the extension of the electrode device 56 through the distal orifice 38. The actuator may take the form of a switch, lever 78, threaded control knob, or other suitable mechanism, and is preferably one that can provide fine control over the movement of the outer sheath 36 or the inner sheath 60, as the case may be. In one embodiment of the invention, the actuator interfaces with the outer sheath to move it back and forth relative to the inner sheath. In another embodiment the actuator interfaces with the inner sheath to move it back and forth relative to the outer sheath. The relative position between the outer sheath and inner sheath is thus controlled, but other control approaches may be used.

In a preferred embodiment of a catheter 90 is illustrated in FIG. 5. An inner member 92 or sheath is contained within the outer sheath 94. The inner sheath is preferably constructed from a flexible polymer such as polyimide, polyethylene, or nylon, and can travel the entire length of the catheter. The majority of the catheter should be flexible so as to navigate the tortuous paths of the venous system. A hypotube having a flared distal end 98 and a circular crosssectional shape is attached over the distal end of the inner sheath 92. The hypotube 96 is preferably no more than about two to three centimeters in length. The hypotube acts as part of a conductive secondary lead 100. An uninsulated conductive electrode sphere 102 is slipped over the hypotube. The flared distal end of the hypotube prevents the electrode sphere from moving beyond the distal end of the hypotube. The sphere is permanently affixed to the hypotube, such as by soldering the sphere both front and back on the hypotube. The majority of the surface of the electrode sphere remains uninsulated. The remainder of the hypotube is preferably insulated so that the sphere-shaped distal end can act as the electrode. For example, the hypotube can be covered with an insulating material such as a coating of parylene. The interior lumen of the hypotube is lined by the inner sheath 92 which is attached to the flared distal end of the hypotube by adhesive such as epoxy.

Surrounding the secondary lead 100 are a plurality of primary leads 104 that preferably have a flat rectangular strip shape and can act as arms. In one configuration, the strip shape is a width from 0.76 mm (0.03 in) to 1.00 mm (0.04 in) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005

10

in.). As illustrated in FIG. 6, the plurality of primary leads 104 is preferably connected to common conductive rings 106. This configuration maintains the position of the plurality of primary leads, while reducing the number of internal electrical connections. The conductive rings 106 are attached to the inner sheath 92. The position of the rings and the primary leads relative to the outer sheath 94 follows that of the inner sheath. As earlier described, the hypotube 96 of the secondary lead is also attached to the inner sheath. Two separate conductive rings can be used so that the polarity of different primary leads can be controlled separately. For example, adjacent primary leads can be connected to one of the two separate conductive rings so that the adjacent leads can be switched to have either opposite polarities or the same polarity. The rings are preferably spaced closely together, but remain electrically isolated from each other along the inner sheath. Both the rings and the hypotube are coupled with the inner sheath, and the primary leads that are connected to the rings move together with the secondary lead while remaining electrically isolated from the secondary lead. Epoxy or another suitable adhesive can be used to attach the rings to the inner sheath. The primary leads from the respective rings alternate with each other along the circumference of the inner sheath. The insulation along the underside of the leads prevents an electrical short between the rings. FIG. 6a illustrates an end view of the working end of catheter 90 taken along line 6a—6a of FIG. 6.

The conductive rings 106 and the primary leads 104 are attached together to act as cantilevers where the ring forms the base and the rectangular primary leads operate as the cantilever arms. The primary leads are formed to have an arc or bend such that the primary leads act as arms that tend to spring outwardly away from the catheter 90 and toward the surrounding venous tissue. Insulation along the underside of the primary leads and the conductive rings prevents unintended electrical coupling therebetween. Alternately, the primary leads are formed straight and connected to the conductive rings at an angle such that the primary leads tend to expand or spring radially outward from the conductive rings. The angle at which the primary leads are attached to the conductive rings should be sufficient to force the primary distal ends and their electrodes 108 through blood and into apposition with the vein wall 80 but not enough to preclude vein shrinkage. In particular, the primary leads 104 are formed with enough strength, and are mounted or bent such that they expand outwardly into apposition with the inner wall of the vein. However, the force they develop in an outward direction is not strong enough to prevent radial shrinkage of the vein. As the vein shrinks, due to the heating caused by the energy delivered by the electrodes 108, the shrinking vein causes a contraction of the primary electrodes. Due to the outward force constantly exerted by the primary leads 104, the electrodes 108 remain in constant apposition with the vein wall as it shrinks.

Other properties of the primary leads, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead against the vein wall and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. The rectangular cross section of the primary leads can provide increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. The primary leads are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward due to the increased size of the rectangular lead in that sideways direction, and a uniform spacing between primary leads is more assured. Uniform spacing between the primary leads and the distal ends promotes uniform heating around the vein by the electrodes 108.

US 6,258,084 B1

11

The distal ends of the primary leads 104 are uninsulated to act as the electrodes 108 having a rounded shape. In the embodiment shown, the shape is convex which may take the form of a spoon or hemispherical shape. The primary leads can be stamped to produce an integral shaped electrode at the distal end of the primary leads. The uninsulated outer portion of the distal end of the electrodes 108 which are to come into apposition with the wall of the vein is preferably rounded and convex. The flattened or non-convex inner portion of the distal end is insulated to minimize any unintended thermal effect, such as on the surrounding blood in a vein. The distal ends of the electrodes 108 are configured such that when the distal ends are forced toward the inner sheath 92, as shown in FIG. 5a the distal ends combine to form a substantially spherical shape with a profile smaller than the spherical electrode 102 at the secondary distal end.

In one preferred embodiment as shown in FIG. 6, the electrodes 108 comprise a convex, square center section with semi-circular ends. It has been found that this "race track" configuration maximizes surface area of contact for the electrodes 108 shown.

The outer sheath 94 can slide over and surround the primary and secondary leads 100 and 104. The outer sheath includes an orifice 110 which is dimensioned to have approximately the same size as the spherical electrode 102 at the secondary distal end. A close or snug fit between the spherical electrode 102 and the orifice 110 of the outer sheath is achieved. This configuration provides an atraumatic tip for the catheter 90. The spherical electrode 102 is preferably slightly larger than the orifice 110. The inner diameter of the outer sheath is approximately the same as the diameter of the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 108.

A fluid port (not shown) can communicate with the interior of the outer sheath 94 so that fluid can be flushed between the outer sheath and inner sheath 92 as described above. Alternately, a fluid port can communicate with a central lumen 112 in the hypotube which can also accept a guide wire for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. It is to be understood that another lumen can be formed in the catheter to deliver fluid to the treatment site. The delivered fluid displaces or exsanguinates blood from the vein so as to avoid heating and coagulation of blood. The delivery of a dielectric fluid increases the surrounding impedance so that RF energy is directed into the tissue of the vein wall. An alternate fluid could be a sclerosing agent which could serve to displace blood or to further enhance occlusion of the vein when applied before, during, or after energy delivery. The fluid can also include an anticoagulant such as heparin which can chemically discourage the coagulation of blood at the treatment site. The catheter 90 can be periodically flushed with saline which can prevent the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter. The saline can be flushed through the central lumen 112 or between the inner and outer sheaths. If a central lumen is not desired, the lumen of the hypotube can be filled with solder.

The electrode device 114 can operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads have opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation is available. When the primary leads are commonly charged a monopolar electrode operation is available in combination with a large return electrode pad placed in contact with the patient. When the primary electrodes 108 are commonly charged or have a first potential, and a secondary electrode 102 has an opposite polarity or different potential, a bipolar electrode operation is available. More or fewer leads may be

12

used. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the vein to be treated, as described above.

Although not shown, it is to be understood that the catheter 90 can include one or more temperature sensors, such as thermocouples, mounted in place on an electrode 108 so that the sensor is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 108. (The sensor is shown in a raised position in the drawings for clarity of illustration only). The temperature sensor senses the temperature of the portion of the vein that is in apposition with the exposed electrode 108 surface. The sensor provides an indication of when shrinkage occurs (70 degrees C. or higher). Application of RF energy from the electrodes 108 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, such as the temperature at which venous tissue begins to cauterize. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein 22 is detected. This also helps to forestall overheating of the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 7 and 8, in the operation of this embodiment of a catheter 90, the catheter is inserted into a vein 22. Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or another technique may be used to direct and confirm the specific placement of the catheter in the vein. Impedance measurements can also be used to determine proper positioning of the catheter, particularly at the ostium of a vessel such as at the sapheno-femoral junction. The impedance will be low when the electrodes are in the blood stream. The catheter can then be moved until a high impedance value is obtained, indicating electrode contact with the vein wall. The vein wall 80 has been compressed by the introduction of tumescent anesthesia into the tissue surrounding the vein as indicated by the arrows. The arrows in the figures indicate the compression of the tissue. Unless stated otherwise, all drawing figures having arrows indicating tissue compression are not drawn to scale for purposes of clarity of illustration and are meant to be representations of the vein in a nearly fully occluded state.

The reduction in the vein 22 diameter caused by the tumescence of the tissue in contact with the treatment site assists in pre-shaping the vein to be molded to a ligated state. The compression also exsanguinates the vein and forces blood away from the treatment site, thus preventing coagulation.

The actuator 76 (FIG. 4) is then operated to retract the outer sheath 94 to expose leads the 100 and 104. As the outer sheath no longer restrains the leads, the primary leads 104 move outward relative to the axis defined by the outer sheath, while the secondary lead 100 remains substantially linear along the axis defined by the outer sheath. The primary leads continue to move outward until their electrodes 108 are placed in apposition with the vein wall 80 and the outward movement of the primary leads is impeded. The primary electrodes 108 contact the vein wall along a generally circumferential area or band of the vein wall. This outward movement of the primary leads occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion so that the primary electrodes 108 are substantially evenly spaced. Alternately, the electrodes 86 can be spaced apart in a staggered fashion such that they do not lie in the same plane. For example, the adjacent electrodes 86 can extend different lengths from the catheter so that a smaller cross-sectional profile is achieved when the electrodes 86 are collapsed toward one another.

When the electrodes 102 and 108 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the RF generator 50 is activated



US 6,258,084 B1

13

to provide suitable RF energy. One suitable frequency is 510 kHz. One criterion used in selecting the frequency of the energy to be applied is the control desired over the spread, including the depth, of the thermal effect in the venous tissue. Another criterion is compatibility with filter circuits for eliminating RF noise from thermocouple signals. In a bipolar operation, the primary electrodes 108 are charged with one polarity opposite that of the secondary electrode 102. The coupling between oppositely charged primary and secondary electrodes produces RF fields therebetween, and form a symmetrical RF field pattern along a circumferential band of the vein wall 80 to achieve a uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy produces a thermal effect which causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein 22. The thermal effect produces structural transfiguration of the collagen fibrils in the vein. The collagen fibrils shorten and thicken in cross-section in response to the heat from the thermal effect. As shown in FIG. 8, the energy causes the vein wall 88 to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the primary lead electrodes 108. The primary lead electrodes are pressed closer together by the shrinking vein wall and assume a reduced profile shape which is sufficiently small so that the vein is effectively ligated.

The catheter 90 is pulled back while continuing energy delivery as shown in FIG. 9. Ligation as the catheter is being retracted produces a lengthy occlusion 89 which is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization than an acute point occlusion.

In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 102 remains neutral, while the primary electrodes 108 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form RF fields substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein. The thermal effect produced by those RF fields along the axial length of the vein wall 80 causes the vein wall to collapse around the primary lead electrodes. The electrode device is retracted as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall, as previously described. The electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters apart along the circumference of the vein wall 80, which defines the target vein diameter for a designed electrode catheter. Where the electrodes are substantially evenly spaced in a substantially symmetrical arrangement, and the spacing between the electrodes is maintained, a symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion.

Although not shown, in another embodiment, the primary leads may be mounted or otherwise configured such that they expand outwardly in an asymmetrical fashion. One purpose for an asymmetrical electrode arrangement is to only shrink a portion of the vein wall to achieve occlusion. Such may be desired in the case of preferentially shrinking a tributary branch or aneurysm on one side of the vein.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section or treatment site, the actuator 76 causes the primary leads 104 to return to the interior of the outer sheath 94. Once the primary leads are within the outer sheath, the catheter 90 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated.

As illustrated in FIGS. 10 and 11, another embodiment of an expandable electrode catheter 118 includes two sets of

14

expandable electrode leads 120 and 122, although additional sets of electrode leads may be possible. The electrodes 124 of this embodiment are similar to the electrodes of the embodiment illustrated in FIG. 6 having electrodes with a rounded, convex, spoon-shaped contact area. Other shapes for the electrode may be used, such as ellipses, rounded, ovals, race tracks, and others. Although only one electrode is indicated by numeral 124 in FIGS. 10 and 11, this is for purposes of clarity in the drawings only. All electrodes are meant to be indicated by numeral 124. While each set of electrode leads may include as few as two electrode leads, the illustrated embodiment includes six electrode leads per set, although more than six electrode leads may be used as well.

In the embodiment shown in FIGS. 10 and 11, the sets of electrode leads 120 and 122 are longitudinally separated from each other. Thus, the electrodes within each set of electrode leads are separated from one another radially and each of those electrodes is also separated from every electrode in the other set longitudinally, due to the longitudinal separation. There therefore exists radial separation and longitudinal separation of electrodes at the working end 126 of the catheter 118 in the arrangement shown in FIGS. 10 and 11.

With the configuration of electrode leads presented in FIGS. 10 and 11, greater flexibility exists in establishing current flows through the tissue of a patient. As in previous embodiments, the electrodes expand outwardly into contact with patient tissue. Where all the electrodes of a first set of electrode leads have the same polarity, there may be an odd number of electrodes in the set, or an even number. All electrodes in the set may be connected to a common connection point, such as the conducting ring 106 shown in FIG. 6. A single conductor from the connecting end of the catheter may power all electrodes of the set by a single connection to that conducting ring. All electrodes of a second set of electrode leads may also be commonly connected at a respective conducting ring but to a different electrical potential than the first set. Because two different electrical potentials exist at the working end of the catheter, energy will flow through the patient tissue between those sets of electrode leads and a bipolar arrangement will exist. Thus, a length of patient tissue, at least as long as the distance between the first and second sets of electrode leads, will receive the energy.

A monopolar arrangement may also be established if desired by setting all electrodes of all electrode leads to the same electrical potential and establishing a different electrical potential outside the patient, such as at a "backplate" in contact with the skin of the patient at a selected location. Energy from the working end 126 of the catheter will then flow through the patient to the return provided by the backplate.

In another arrangement in polarizing or controlling the electrical potential at the electrodes, the electrodes in the first set of electrode leads may be individually controlled so that there are electrode pairs of differing potentials in the set of leads. This would establish a bipolar approach within the first set of leads itself. If the electrodes of the second set of leads are likewise connected for different potentials among themselves, they too would provide a bipolar approach in their own set and currents would flow through patient tissue between the electrodes in each set of leads. If the electrodes having a first polarity in the first set are aligned with the electrodes having a different polarity in the second set of leads, energy would not only flow between the bipolar electrodes within the set but would also flow to the elec-

US 6,258,084 B1

15

trodes in the other set resulting in two bipolar arrangements at the single working end of the catheter. Patient tissue of a length at least as great as the distance between the first and second sets of electrode leads will receive energy as well as patient tissue between electrodes within each set of leads itself.

A further arrangement coupled with the bipolar approach just described would be to also use a backplate at a different electrical potential to provide further control over the energy flow through the patient's tissue. In this case, energy would flow between the electrodes within each set of leads, between electrodes in different sets of leads, and between electrodes and the backplate.

In yet a further arrangement, each of the electrodes may be individually connected to a power source (50, FIG. 4) and the electrical potential at each electrode can be individually controlled. This arrangement may yield even more precise control over the current densities through patient tissue. As an example, where less current flow is desired between certain electrodes of a set of leads but more current flow is desired between those electrodes and electrodes of a second set of leads, the potential between the electrodes of the same set may be reduced but the potential between those electrodes and the electrodes of the second set of leads may be increased resulting in the desired current flow densities. In the case where a backplate is also used, the electrodes may be controlled so that energy flows between such electrodes and the backplate. Because each electrode is individually controlled, the level of energy it imparts to the tissue at its location is controllable.

One factor that could affect the number of electrodes per set of electrode leads is the diameter of the vein being treated. The design of the contact pad for the electrode leads could also affect the desired number of electrodes for a given procedure.

In this embodiment, the electrode leads 120, 122 are formed to expand outwardly into apposition with the target tissue, yet as the target tissue shrinks, the electrodes maintain contact with that tissue and are moved inwardly by that tissue. Because of this arrangement, the leads compensate for variations in the diameter of the vein. They are therefore capable of maintaining apposition with the tissue whether or not compression of the vein or anatomical structure exists, such as by use of a pressure cuff or tourniquet or tumescence of the surrounding tissue.

The tip 128 of the electrode catheter 118 should have a hemispherical or another atraumatic shape. The tip 128 may be electrically neutral, and may be fabricated from a polymer or it may be fabricated of stainless steel. Because the tip 128 has a rounded shape and is located at the distal extreme of the catheter, it may perform a guiding function when introducing the catheter to the patient.

The double set of expandable electrodes can be used to ligate veins or other hollow anatomical structures in a manner similar to that previously described. The outer sheath 130 can be pulled back to allow the electrode to expand outwardly from the catheter and into apposition with the wall of the lumen being treated. The two sets of electrodes 120 and 122 apply energy to the lumen to cause it to shrink to a reduced diameter. The catheter can be moved or pulled back while the energy is being applied to treat an extended area of the lumen. When the desired area of the lumen or vein is treated (e.g., ligated) energy is no longer provided to the electrodes, and the outer sheath 130 is pushed forward to force the expanded electrodes back to an unexpanded condition. The catheter can then be removed from the patient, or another section of the vein can be treated.

16

The description of the component parts discussed above are for a catheter to be used in a vein ranging in size from 3 mm (0.12 in) to 10 mm (0.39 in) in diameter. It is to be understood that these dimensions do not limit the scope of the invention and are merely exemplary in nature. The dimensions of the component parts may be changed to configure a catheter that may be used in various-sized veins or other anatomical structures.

Referring now to FIG. 12, there is shown a partial cross-section view of the catheter of FIGS. 10 and 11. Two pluralities of electrodes 120 and 122 are shown with the electrodes of the first plurality 120 being indicated by numeral 124 and the electrodes of the second plurality 122 being indicated by numeral 150. Each electrode is formed from an electrically-conductive electrode lead 152 and 154 respectively that is electrically insulated along its length except at its distal end at which point no insulation exists thus forming the electrode. Each lead has an outward bend (not shown). An inner tube 156 includes a lumen 158 through which fluid may flow for flush or other purposes, or through which a guide wire may be positioned. A hypotube 160 is positioned over the inner tube and layers of insulation 162 are mounted over the hypotube. The first plurality 120 of electrode leads 152 extend proximally to a first mounting ring 164 to which all are connected. The second plurality 122 of electrode leads 154 extend proximally to a second mounting ring 166 to which all are connected. The rings 164 and 166 are mounted over the hypotube insulation so that no electrical conduction path exists between the two. Wire conductors 168 and 170 extend from the proximal end of the catheter to each ring so that all electrode leads connected to a particular ring are interconnected electrically.

Alternate arrangements are possible and in one, alternating electrodes of a particular plurality are connected to two different rings. Each ring is separately connected to the power source and the polarities of the rings may therefore be made different to establish a bipolar approach within the plurality. One electrode may be a "+" polarity while the two adjacent electrodes may be a "-" polarity. In this case then, there would be a total of three rings for all electrodes. In another arrangement, both pluralities would have two rings for its respective electrodes with alternating electrodes connected to different rings so that bipolar approaches within each plurality may be established. In this case, there would exist a total of four rings for the two pluralities of electrodes.

An outer movable sheath 172 when slid in the distal direction to the point shown in FIG. 12 will cause the electrode leads to contract to the position shown. When slid in the proximal direction a sufficient distance, the sheath 172 acts as a deployment device in that it will move past the bend (not shown) in each of the electrode leads of the second plurality 122 permitting all electrode leads to expand outwardly as shown in FIG. 11.

The electrode leads are formed of stainless steel in this embodiment and with the thin insulation layer and the outward bend, have enough strength to automatically move outwardly through blood flow (in a venous application) and into apposition with the inner wall of the target tissue. As the inner wall shrinks due to the application of heat by the electrodes, the inner wall will force the electrode leads toward their contracted position but the electrodes will automatically stay in apposition with the inner wall during the entire ligation process due to their outward bends and the material of which they are formed.

In one embodiment shown in FIG. 12, the electrode 124 includes a temperature sensor 54 and an electrode of the

US 6,258,084 B1

17

second plurality also includes a temperature sensor 54. Although not shown as such, they are mounted flush with the outer electrode surfaces and their wires protrude inwardly through the electrode and are held in place along the respective leads 152 and 154. In one embodiment, the microprocessor 52 (FIG. 4) receives the signals from both temperature sensors, averages those signals and determines the effective temperature at the treatment site based on that average signal. Methods of averaging temperature signals are well known to those skilled in the art and no further description is provided here.

Although described above as positively charged, negatively charged, or as a positive conductor or negative conductor, these terms are used for purposes of illustration only. These terms are generally meant to refer to different electrode potentials and are not meant to indicate that any particular voltage is positive or negative. Furthermore, other types of energy such as light energy from fiber optics can be used to create a thermal effect in the hollow anatomical structure undergoing treatment. Additionally, although the electrodes and leads have been described as protruding from a distal orifice in the catheter, they may be expanded by other means and in other configurations. In another embodiment, the leads may be deployed by an inner pull wire, hydraulics, or magnetic fields.

The benefits of tumescence would include locally anesthetizing the treatment area for a prolonged period of time and insulating most of the surrounding tissue and nerves from the damage of heat conducting from the treated vein. An additional benefit of the vasoconstriction induced by the Epinephrine would be that the constricted blood vessels would limit how fast the body absorbed the Lidocaine thus keeping the level of Lidocaine absorbed below the toxicity level. Also, as mentioned supra, extended applications of energy have a greater possibility of increasing the temperature of the blood to an unacceptable level and may result in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable. Using a tumescent anesthesia compression technique, including the administration of vasoconstrictive drugs, would aid in preventing this problem by exsanguinating the vein.

Although described above in terms of a vein, the concepts are generally applicable to other hollow anatomical structures in the body as well. The above description has been generally confined to veins in consideration of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

While several particular forms of the invention have been illustrated and described, it will be apparent that various modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Accordingly, it is not intended that the invention be limited, except as by the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure from within the hollow portion of the structure, the method comprising the steps of:

- introducing a catheter having a working end with an energy application device at the working end into the hollow anatomical structure;
- positioning the working end of the catheter proximate a treatment site within the hollow anatomical structure;
- injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue that is in contact with the treatment site to cause the tissue to become tumescent and compress the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site to a compressed size; and

18

applying energy to the compressed hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site via the energy application device until the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes a smaller size.

2. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution comprises the step of injection enough tumescent fluid solution into the tissue such that the tumescent tissue compresses the treatment site sufficiently to exsanguinate blood from the hollow portion of the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy comprises the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site.

4. The method of claim 3 further comprising the step of moving the energy application device along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy so as to result in a lengthy occlusion of the treatment site.

5. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy further includes moving the energy application device along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein the hollow anatomical structure comprises a vein and the treatment site comprises a length of the vein.

7. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue comprises the step of injecting a tumescent fluid having an anesthetic into the selected tissue.

8. The method of claim 7 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue comprises the step of injecting a tumescent fluid having an anesthetic and a vasoconstrictive drug into the selected tissue.

9. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of delivering fluid from within the hollow structure to the treatment site.

10. The method of claim 9 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises delivering fluid to exsanguinate the treatment site.

11. The method of claim 9 wherein the step of delivering fluid consists of delivering fluid from the following group:

- saline;
- vasoconstrictive agent;
- sclerosing agent;
- high impedance fluid; and
- heparin.

12. The method of claim 1 further comprising the steps of: sensing the temperatures at two separate locations on the energy application device;

averaging the two sensed temperatures at the two separate locations; and

determining a temperature at the energy application device based on the averaged temperatures.

13. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy to the compressed hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site comprises applying electrical energy to the inner wall of the treatment site with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall.

14. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy to the compressed hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site comprises applying electrical energy to the inner wall of the treatment site with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall, the method further comprising the steps of:

- applying electrical energy with the electrode to effectively occlude the treatment site at the electrode; and
- moving the electrode along the treatment site while maintaining the electrode in apposition with the vein wall

US 6,258,084 B1

19

while performing the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site so as to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

15. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of applying energy comprises applying sufficient energy to collapse the hollow anatomical structure around the energy application device as it is being moved along the treatment site to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

16. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of determining when apposition of the energy application device with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure has occurred by monitoring the impedance experienced by the energy application device.

17. The method of claim 14 wherein the step of applying electrical energy to effectively occlude the treatment site at the electrode comprises applying said energy with a plurality of electrodes, and further comprises the steps of:

sensing the temperatures at two separate electrodes; and averaging the two sensed temperatures; and

determining a temperature at the electrodes based on the averaged temperatures.

18. A method of applying energy to an inner wall of a vein from within the vein along a treatment portion, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end with an energy application device at the working end into the treatment portion;

injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue outside the vein but in contact with the vein at the treatment site to cause the tissue to become tumescent and compress the vein at the treatment site to a compressed size;

applying energy to the compressed vein at the treatment site via the energy application device; and withdrawing the catheter.

19. The method of claim 18 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution comprises the step of injecting enough tumescent fluid solution into the tissue such that the tumescent tissue compresses the treatment site sufficiently to exsanguinate blood from the hollow portion of the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site.

20. The method of claim 18 further comprising the step of moving the energy application device along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy so as to result in a lengthy occlusion of the treatment site.

21. The method of claim 18 wherein the step of moving the energy application device comprises moving the energy application device along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy such that the vein collapses around the energy application device as it is being moved.

22. The method of claim 18 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue comprises the step of injecting a tumescent fluid having an anesthetic into the selected tissue.

23. The method of claim 22 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue comprises the step of injecting a tumescent fluid having an anesthetic and a vasoconstrictive drug into the selected tissue.

24. The method of claim 18 further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the treatment site.

25. The method of claim 24 wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises delivering fluid to exsanguinate the treatment site.

26. The method of claim 24 wherein the step of delivering fluid consists of delivering fluid from the following group: saline;

20

vasoconstrictive agent;  
sclerosing agent;  
high impedance fluid; and  
heparin.

27. The method of claim 18 further comprising the steps of:

sensing the temperatures at two separate locations on the energy application device; and

averaging the two sensed temperatures at the two separate locations;

determining a temperature at the energy application device based on the averaged temperatures.

28. The method of claim 18 wherein the step of applying energy to the compressed vein at the treatment site comprises applying electrical energy to the inner wall of the vein with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall.

29. The method of claim 18 wherein the step of applying energy to the compressed vein at the treatment site comprises applying electrical energy to the inner wall of the treatment site with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall, the method further comprising the steps of:

applying electrical energy with the electrode to effectively occlude the treatment site at the electrode; and

moving the electrode along the treatment site while maintaining the electrode in apposition with the vein wall while performing the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site so as to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

30. The method of claim 29 wherein the step of applying energy comprises applying sufficient energy to collapse the vein around the electrode as it is being moved along the treatment site to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

31. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure from within the hollow portion of the structure, the hollow anatomical structure having an inner wall, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing a catheter having a working end with an energy application device at the working end into the hollow anatomical structure;

positioning the working end of the catheter proximate a treatment site within the hollow anatomical structure;

determining when apposition of the energy application device with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure has occurred by monitoring the impedance experienced by the energy application device; and

applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site via the energy application device until the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes a smaller size.

32. The method of claim 31 wherein the step of applying energy comprises the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site.

33. The method of claim 31 further comprising the step of moving the energy application device along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy so as to result in a lengthy occlusion of the treatment site.

34. The method of claim 31 further comprising the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue surrounding the treatment site to compress the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site to a compressed size.

35. The method of claim 34 wherein the tumescent fluid solution includes an anesthetic.

US 6,258,084 B1

21

36. The method of claim 35 wherein the step of injecting a tumescent fluid solution into selected tissue comprises the step of injecting a tumescent fluid having an anesthetic and a vasoconstrictive drug into the selected tissue.

37. The method of claim 31 further comprising the step of delivering fluid from within the hollow structure to the treatment site.

38. The method of claim 31 further comprising the steps of:

sensing the temperatures at two separate locations on the energy application device;

averaging the two sensed temperatures at the two separate locations; and

22

determining a temperature at the energy application device based on the averaged temperatures.

39. The method of claim 31 further comprising the steps of:

expanding a plurality of leads outwardly from the working end of the catheter, wherein the distal ends of the leads move away from each other and into non-penetrating contact with the inner wall of the anatomical structure; and

applying energy to the inner wall of the anatomical structure by the distal ends of the leads until the anatomical structure collapses.

\* \* \* \* \*

# **EXHIBIT 4**





US007396355B2

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Goldman et al.**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,396,355 B2**  
(45) **Date of Patent:** **\*Jul. 8, 2008**

(54) **METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION**

4,564,011 A 1/1986 Goldman  
4,643,186 A 2/1987 Rosen et al.  
4,660,571 A 4/1987 Hess et al.  
4,776,349 A 10/1988 Nashef et al.

(75) **Inventors:** **Mitchel P. Goldman**, La Jolla, CA (US);  
**Robert A. Weiss**, Baltimore, MD (US);  
**Arthur W. Zikorus**, San Jose, CA (US);  
**James G. Chandler**, Boulder, CO (US)

(Continued)

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

(73) **Assignee:** **VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.**,  
Sunnyvale, CA (US)

EP 0 189 329 A2 7/1986

(Continued)

(\*) **Notice:** Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(h) by 434 days.

**OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

Min et al, U.S. Appl. No. 60/118,050, filed Feb. 1, 1999.

(Continued)

(21) **Appl. No.:** **10/872,646**

*Primary Examiner*—Michael Peffley

(22) **Filed:** **Jun. 21, 2004**

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Knobbe, Martens, Olson & Bear LLP

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2004/0243201 A1 Dec. 2, 2004

**Related U.S. Application Data**

(63) Continuation of application No. 09/899,885, filed on Jul. 6, 2001, now Pat. No. 6,752,803, which is a continuation of application No. 09/267,127, filed on Mar. 10, 1999, now Pat. No. 6,258,084, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 09/138,472, filed on Aug. 21, 1998, now Pat. No. 6,179,832, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/927,251, filed on Sep. 11, 1997, now Pat. No. 6,200,312.

(51) **Int. Cl.**  
**A61B 18/18** (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** ..... 606/41; 128/898; 607/105

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... 606/27-29,  
606/31-32, 34, 41, 42; 607/96, 98, 100-102,  
607/104-106

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

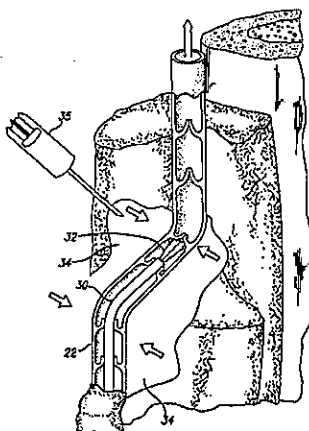
**U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

3,301,258 A 1/1967 Werner et al.

(57) **ABSTRACT**

An electrode catheter is introduced into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein, and is positioned at a treatment site within the structure. Tumescent fluid is injected into the tissue surrounding the treatment site to produce tumescence of the surrounding tissue which then compresses the vein. The solution may include an anesthetic, and may further include a vasoconstrictive drug that shrinks blood vessels. The tumescent swelling in the surrounding tissue causes the hollow anatomical structure to become compressed, thereby exsanguinating the treatment site. Energy is applied by an electrode catheter in apposition with the vein wall to create a heating effect. The heating effect causes the hollow anatomical structure to become molded and durably assume the compressed dimensions caused by the tumescent technique. The electrode catheter can be moved within the structure so as to apply energy to a large section of the hollow anatomic structure. In a further aspect, the location of the electrodes is determined by impedance monitoring. Also, temperature sensors at the treatment site are averaged to determine the site temperature.

25 Claims, 6 Drawing Sheets



## US 7,396,355 B2

Page 2

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,122,137	A	6/1992	Lennox	
5,127,902	A	7/1992	Fischell	
5,188,602	A	2/1993	Nichols	
5,556,396	A	9/1996	Cohen et al.	
5,695,495	A	12/1997	Ellman et al.	
5,709,224	A	1/1998	Behl et al.	
5,827,268	A	10/1998	Laufer	
5,863,290	A	1/1999	Gough et al.	
6,033,397	A	3/2000	Laufer et al.	
6,033,398	A	3/2000	Farley et al.	
6,036,687	A	3/2000	Laufer et al.	
6,139,527	A	10/2000	Laufer et al.	
6,152,899	A	11/2000	Farley et al.	
6,210,402	B1	4/2001	Olsen et al.	
6,228,082	B1 *	5/2001	Baker et al.	606/49
6,258,084	B1	7/2001	Goldman et al.	
6,398,777	B1	6/2002	Navarro et al.	
6,401,719	B1 *	6/2002	Farley et al.	128/898
6,689,126	B1	2/2004	Farley et al.	
6,752,803	B2 *	6/2004	Goldman et al.	606/32

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 727 184	A1	8/1996
SU	207289		12/1967
WO	WO 93/21846		11/1993
WO	WO 94/07446		4/1994
WO	WO 95/31142		11/1995
WO	WO 97/32532		9/1997
WO	WO 98/19613		5/1998

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Min et al, U.S. Appl. No. 60/119,235, filed Feb. 9, 1999.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,769,433: preliminary amendment of Sep. 2001, office action of Sep. 2002, amendment of Mar. 2003, office action of Jul. 2003, amendments of Dec. 2003 and Jan. 2004, notice of allowability of Apr. 2004. Excerpt from file history of US 6,237,606: original claims, preliminary amendment of Mar. 1999, office action of Feb. 2000, amendment of Apr. 2000, office action of Jul. 2000, summary of interview of Sep. 2000, amendment of Oct. 2000, notice of allowability of Jan. 2001.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/900,563: original claims, office action of Jan. 2005, amendment of Apr. 2005, office action of Jun. 2005, office action of Dec. 2005, amendment of May 2006, office action of Aug. 2006, summary of interview of Jan. 2007, office action response of Jan. 2007, office action of Apr. 2007, response filed Jul. 2007, supplemental response filed Aug. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,752,803: preliminary amendment of Jul. 2001, office action of Sep. 2002, amendment of Mar. 2003, office action of Jun. 2003, summary of interview of Oct. 2003, amendment of Oct. 2003, office action of Nov. 2003, response of Jan. 2004, notice of allowability of Feb. 2004.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,258,084: original claims, office action of Apr. 2000, amendment of Aug. 2000, summary of interview of Dec. 2000, notice of allowability of Dec. 2000.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/738,488: preliminary amendment of Mar. 2004, office action of Mar. 2006, response of Apr. 2006, office action of Jun. 2006, summary of interview of Oct. 2006, amendment of Oct. 2006, office action of Jun. 2007, summary of interview of Aug. 2007, amendment filed Sep. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,682,526: original claims, preliminary amendments of Nov. 2000, Jan. 2001, May 2001,

office action of Feb. 2002, response of Mar. 2002, office action of Jul. 2002, amendment of Jan. 2003, office action of Mar. 2003, amendment of Aug. 2003, notice of allowability of Sep. 2003.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/164,928: original claims, office action of Oct. 2003, amendment of Apr. 2004, office action of Jul. 2004, terminal disclaimer of Aug. 2004, restriction requirement of Jul. 2007, amendment and response filed Oct. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,401,719: original claims, office action of Oct. 2000, amendment of Dec. 2000, office action of Mar. 2001, amendment of Jul. 2001, office action of Aug. 2001, response of Nov. 2001, notice of allowability of Mar. 2002.

Ogawa et al., Electrothrombosis as a Treatment of Cirroid Angioma in the Face and Scalp and Varicosis of the Leg, Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery, vol. 70, No. 3, pp. 310-318, Sep. 1982.

Parisch, Compression Therapy of the Legs, J. Dermatol. Surg. Oncol. 17:799-805, 1991.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits I, O-Q, BB and DD thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 10, 2007. *VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits KK, MM and OO thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Dr. R. Rox Anderson in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Richard J. Twilley (with Exhibits C, I, L-N and R-U thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Eric E. Grondahl (with Exhibits A-D thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary

## US 7,396,355 B2

Page 3

Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendant Diomed's Answer to First Amended Complaint, dated Oct. 31, 2005.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS's Answer to Counterclaims of Diomed Asserted in Response to First Amended Complaint, dated Nov. 23, 2005.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff's Disclosure of Asserted Claims and Preliminary Infringement Contentions, dated Jan. 23, 2006, and Exhibits A-C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Preliminary Invalidity Contentions Pursuant to Patent Local Rule 3-3, dated Mar. 9, 2006, and Exhibits A-D thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Supplemental Submission by Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc. Regarding Their Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, dated Apr. 11, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Vascular Solutions, Inc.'s Disclosure of Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, dated Mar. 9, 2006, and Exhibits A-D thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Angiodynamics, Inc.'s Disclosure of Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, dated Mar. 9, 2006, and Exhibits A-E thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff's Disclosure of Asserted Claims and Final Infringement Contentions, dated Dec. 20, 2006, and Exhibits A-C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Final Invalidity Contentions Pursuant to Patent Local Rule 3-6, dated Jan. 9, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Angiodynamics, Inc.'s Disclosure of Final Invalidity Contentions, dated Jan. 9, 2007, and Exhibit C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Vascular Solutions, Inc.'s Final Invalidity Contentions, dated Jan. 9, 2007, and Exhibit C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): VNUS Medical Technologies' Opening Claim Construction Brief dated Aug. 22, 2006, Appendix 1 and 2 thereto and Proposed Claim Construction Order.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Claim Construction Brief dated Sep. 19, 2006, and accompanying Proposed Claim Construction Order, Declaration of Mark N. Isaacs, M.D. in Support of Defendants' Claim Construction Brief, and Declaration of Ted R. Kohler, M.D. in Support of Defendants' Claim Construction Brief.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Individual Claim Construction Brief of Diomed Holdings Inc. and Diomed, Inc. dated Sep. 19, 2006, and accompanying Proposed Claim Construction Order.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Angiodynamics, Inc.'s Claim Construction Brief dated Sep. 19, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Vascular Solutions, Inc.'s Claim Construction Brief dated Sep. 19, 2006, Appendix 1 thereto and accompanying Proposed Claim Construction Order.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.'s Reply Claim Construction Brief, dated Oct. 11, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Amended Patent Rule 4-3b Chart, dated Oct. 23, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Amended Order Construing Claims, dated Nov. 22, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Response to VNUS Medical Technologies' Third Set of Interrogatories, dated Apr. 18, 2007, and Exhibits A-B thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS's Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement (redacted version), refiled and dated Aug. 28, 2007, and Declaration of Howard Greisler M.D. in support thereof (redacted version).

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendant Diomed's Opposition to VNUS's Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement (redacted version), refiled and dated Sep. 12, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants Angiodynamics' and VSI's Joint Opposition to VNUS's Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement (redacted version), refiled and dated Sep. 12, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS's Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (redacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Dr. J. Kevin McGraw (with Appendices A&B thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits A, D, K-N, R, T-Z, AA, CC, EE, FF and HH thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Opposition to Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (redacted version), dated Aug. 24, 2007, and

US 7,396,355 B2

Page 4

Declaration of Dr. Mitchel P. Goldman (with Appendices A-D thereto) in support thereof.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (redacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits II, LL, and NN thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Supplemental Opposition to Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 and Exhibit A thereto (redacted version), dated Oct. 10, 2007, and Declaration of Dr. Mitchel P. Goldman in support thereof.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (redacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Richard J. Twilley (with Exhibits A, D, F-H, K, O, Q, and V thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Opposition to Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (redacted version), dated Aug. 24, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (redacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Eric E. Grondahl (without Exhibits) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Order Denying Plaintiff VNUS's Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement; Denying Defendants' Motion for Summary Judgment on Enablement and Written Description; and Denying in Part and Deferring in Part Ruling on Defendants' Motion for Summary Judgment Under 35 USC §§ 102-103; dated Oct. 2, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Order Denying Deferred Portion of Defendants' Motion for Summary Judgment Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Oct. 22, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion in Limine #1 and Brief in support thereof, dated Oct. 1, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Opposition to Defendants' Motion in Limine #1, dated Oct. 9, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Order Granting Defendants' Joint Motion in Limine #1, dated Oct. 22, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Motion in Limine and Brief in Support Thereof, to Exclude the Thesis of Dr. Bone-Salat, Evidence of Inventive Activity in Spain, and Uncorroborated Communications About Such Activity, dated Oct. 1, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Opposition to Motion in Limine to Exclude the Thesis of Dr. Bone-Salat, Evidence of Inventive Activity in Spain, and Uncorroborated Communications About Such Activity (redacted version), dated Oct. 16, 2007, and Declarations of Dr. Carlos Bone-Salat in support thereof.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Motion in Limine and Brief in Support Thereof, to Exclude Expert Trial Testimony of Drs. R. Rox Anderson, Irving J. Bigio, J. Kevin McGraw and Cynthia K. Shortell, dated Oct. 1, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Opposition to Motion in Limine to Exclude Expert Trial Testimony of Drs. R. Rox Anderson, Irving J. Bigio, J. Kevin McGraw and Cynthia K. Shortell, dated Oct. 16, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Robert A. Weiss, M.D. (with Exhibits A, C and D thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Howard P. Greisler, M.D., dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of R. Rox Anderson, M.D., dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Irving J. Bigio, Ph.D. (with Exhibit B thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Dr. J. Kevin McGraw (with Appendices B-D thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Eugene C. Rzuclido, Esq. (with Appendix C thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Russell H. Samson, M.D. (with Exhibits C-F thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Cynthia K. Shortell, M.D., dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Warren Grundfest, M.D. (with Appendix A thereto), dated Jan. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Robert A. Weiss, M.D. (with Exhibits A-B thereto), dated Jun. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Charles E. Van Horn, Esq. (with Exhibits D-F thereto), dated Jun. 15, 2007.



## US 7,396,355 B2

Page 5

- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of R. Rox Anderson, M.D., dated Jun. 15, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Dr. J. Kevin McGraw (redacted), dated Jun. 15, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Russell H. Samson, M.D., dated Jun. 15, 2007.
- Muranov, A.N., "Electrocoagulation Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," *Medical Lit. State Pub.*, vol. 88, May 5, 1962.
- Milostanov, V.N., "Electrocoagulation as the Method of Choice for Surgical Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," *State Medical Publishers of the Ukrainian SSR*, Mar. 1962.
- Milostanov, V.N., "Endovascular Electrocoagulation: The Operation of Choice in Treating Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," *Saratov*, Sep. 12-15, 1966.
- Lamper, S.R., "Pathologic-Morphological Changes in the Veins after Endovascular Electrocoagulation," *Stavropol*, 1967.
- Hejhal, et al., "Endovascular Electrocoagulation of Superficial Varices of the Lower Limbs," *Rozhledy v Chirurgii* 38, Jun. 1959, pp. 418-425.
- Lamper, "Electrocoagulation Method to Treat Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremity," *Khirurgia (Mosk.)* 40, Nov. 1964, pp. 111-116.
- Money, "Endovascular Electroablation of Peripheral Veins," 22nd Annual Symposium, Current Critical Problems, New Horizons and Techniques in Vascular and Endovascular Surgery, Nov. 1995.
- O'Reilly, "Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins," *The Australian, New Zealand Journal of Surgery*, vol. 47, No. 3, Jun. 1977, pp. 393-395.
- Politowski, et al., "Complications and Difficulties in Electrocoagulation of Varices of the Lower Extremities," *Surgery*, Jun. 1966, vol. 59, No. 6, pp. 932-934.
- Crockett, et al., "Preliminary Experience With An Endovascular Catheter for Electrocoagulation of Peripheral Veins," *The Journal of Vascular Technology*, Winter 1996, pp. 19-22.
- O'Reilly, "Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis as a Unit of the Armamentarium for the Attack on Varicose Veins," *The Medical Journal of Australia*, Jun. 1, 1974, p. 900.
- Ershov & Safonov, "Multimodality Treatment of Varicosity With Electrocoagulation Medical Guidelines," May 5, 1974, Moscow.
- Becker, et al., "Long-Term Occlusion of the Porcine Cystic Duct by Means of Endoluminal Radio-Frequency Electrocoagulation," *Radiology*, Apr. 1988, pp. 63-68.
- Cragg, et al., "Endovascular Diathermic Vessel Occlusion," *Diagnostic Radiology* 144: pp. 303-308, Jul. 1982.
- Frantsev, et al., "Treatment of Varicose Disease," *Sov Med* 1991, 1:22-25.
- Ershov, "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs," 1968, USSR Academy of Medical Science, pp. 1-15.
- Frantsev, et al., "New Electrodes for Electrosurgical Treatment of Subcutaneous Varicose Veins," May 1973, 110(5), pp. 115-117.
- Sokolnicki, et al., "Attempts to Coagulate Varices of the Lower Limbs with High-Frequency Current," *Polish Medical Weekly*, Jul. 1966, No. 27, pp. 1024-1026.
- Frantsev, "Use of Puncture Monoactive Electrodes in the Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs," Nov. 1970, 105(11):77-80.
- Gardner, et al., "Treatment of Arteriovenous Malformation by Endarterial Electrocoagulation," *Brit. J. Surg.*, Feb. 1972, vol. 59, No. 2, pp. 146-148.
- Thompson, et al., "Transcatheter Electrocoagulation: A Therapeutic Angiographic Technique for Vessel Occlusion," *Investigative Radiology*, Mar.-Apr. 1977, vol. 12, No. 2, pp. 146-153.
- Thompson, et al., "Transcatheter Electrocoagulation: Experimental Evaluation of the Anode," *Investigative Radiology*, Jan.-Feb. 1979, vol. 14, pp. 41-47.
- Thompson, et al., "Vessel Occlusion with Transcatheter Electrocoagulation: Initial Clinical Experience," *Diagnostic Radiology*, Nov. 1979, vol. 133, pp. 335-340.
- Ziada, "Electro-Diathermy of the Long Saphenous Vein in Situ as an Alternative to Stripping," *J. Egypt Med. Assoc.*, 1977, vol. 60, pp. 821-822.
- Becker, et al., "Catheter for Endoluminal Bipolar Electrocoagulation," *Radiology*, Feb. 1989, vol. 170, No. 2, pp. 561-562.
- Aaron, M.D., et al., "The Medical Letter on Drugs and Therapeutics," *Drug and Therapeutic Information Inc.*, Jul. 12, 1968, pp. 53-55.
- Gradman, "Venoscopic Obliteration of Variceal Tributaries Using Monopolar Electrocautery," *Journal of Dermatology Surgery Oncology*, 1994, 20, pp. 482-485.
- Musaev, S.M., "Intravascular Electrocoagulation of Dilated Subcutaneous Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," *Eksp Khir Anesteziol.* Jul.-Aug. 1963, 27:36-7.
- Phillips, et al., "Videoscopic Subfascial Incompetent Perforator Vein Ablation," *British Journal of Surgery*, 1996, 83, p. 1552.
- Ralston, et al., "Effect of Increasing Current and Decreasing Blood Flow for Transcatheter Electrocoagulation," *Investigative Radiology*, Mar.-Apr. 1982, vol. 17, pp. 171-177.
- Watts, "Endovenous Diathermy Destruction of Internal Saphenous," *British Medical Journal*, Oct. 7, 1972, p. 53.
- Ward, "The Treatment of Orbital Varicosities," *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*, Mar. 1987, vol. 113, pp. 286-288.
- Politowski, "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs with the Aid of Electrocoagulation," *Pol Przegl Chir.* Jan. 1964; 36:7-14.
- Goldman, et al., "Diagnosis and Treatment of Varicose Veins: A Review," *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, Sep. 1994, vol. 31, No. 3, pp. 393-413.
- Ruju, et al., "Stripping of the Internal Saphenous Vein by "Tumescent Technique" and Under Local Anesthesia," *G Ital. Chir. Vasc.* 1998: pp. 43-46.
- Nabaloff, "A Complete Stripping of Varicose Veins Under Local Anesthesia," *N.Y. State J. M.*, Jun. 1953, pp. 1445-1448.
- Ricci, et al., "Office Varicose Vein Surgery Under Local Anesthesia," *J. Dermatol. Surg. Oncol.*, 1992, vol. 18, pp. 55-58.
- Cohn, et al., "Ambulatory Phlebectomy Using the Tumescent Technique for Local Anesthesia," *Dermatol. Surg.* 1995, 21:315-318.
- Ricci, et al., "Section I: Ricci-Georgiev Method," from "Ambulatory Phlebectomy: A Practical Guide for Treating Varicose Veins," Chap. 7, Sec. I, pp. 71-74, Mosby Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO 1995.

US 7,396,355 B2

Page 6

- Goldman, "Section II: Goldman Method, Preparation and Dosage," from "Ambulatory Phlebectomy: A Practical Guide for Treating Varicose Veins," Chap. 7, Sec. II, pp. 74-76, Mosby Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO 1995.
- Goldman et al., "High Ligation Division and Groin-to-Knee Stripping of the LSV: An Office Procedure," from "Ambulatory Phlebectomy: A Practical Guide for Treating Varicose Veins," Chap. 15, pp. 163-186, Mosby Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO 1995.
- Smith, et al., "Tumescent Anesthesia in Ambulatory Phlebectomy," *Dermatol. Surg.*, Apr. 1998, vol. 24:453-456.
- Lamper, "Electrocoagulation in the Treatment of Varicose Subcutaneous Veins of the Lower Extremities," *Khirurgiya*, Nov. 1964, No. 11, pp. 93-96.
- Proebstle, et al., "High Ligation and Stripping of the Long Saphenous Vein Using the Tumescent Technique for Local Anesthesia," *Dermatol. Surg.* 1998, vol. 24, pp. 149-153.
- Stallworth, et al., "A Simplified and Efficient Method for Treating Varicose Veins," *Surgery*, Nov. 1979, pp. 765-768.
- Bone Salat, "Phleboesthetic and Lymphedema Conference of the Spanish Society for Aesthetic Medicine," Medical Board of Madrid, Nov. 1998.
- Bone Salat, "Fifth Hispano-Argentinean Conference on Advances in Aesthetic Medicine," Murcia, Oct. 1998.
- Bone Salat, "Master's Thesis: Balearic University of Aesthetic Medicine," Palma de Mallorca, Oct. 1998.
- Petrovsky, "Local Anesthesia," *Big Medical Encyclopedia*, 1974, 3rd Ed., vol. 1, pp. 534-536, Publishing House Soviet Encyclopedia, Moscow.
- Vishnevsky, "Collected Papers," 1952, vol. 5, pp. 30-62, Academy of Medical Science of the USSR, Moscow.
- Muranov, "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremity by the Endovascular Electrocoagulation Method," 1966, vol. 5, S.M. Kirov Academy of Military Medicine, Leningrad.
- Welch, "History of Tumescent Anesthesia, Part I: From American Surgical Textbooks of the 1920s and 1930s," Sep. 1998, vol. 18, No. 5, pp. 353-357, *Aesthetic Surgery Journal*.
- O'Reilly, "A Technique of Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins," 1981, vol. 51, No. 4, *Aust. N.Z. J. Surg.*, pp. 379-382.
- Sigel et al., "The Mechanism of Blood Vessel Closure by High Frequency Electrocoagulation," 1965, pp. 823-831, *Surgery, Gynecology & Obstetrics*.
- Bone Salat, "Endoluminal Diode-Laser Treatment of Varicose Veins," Baron de Pinopar Medical Clinic, Jan. 1999, pp. 1-8.
- Sedov et al., "Reducing Complications from Electrosurgical Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs," Department of Surgery, Drezna City Hospital, Moscow Region. *Klin. Khir.* Jul. 1980;(7):63-64.
- O'Reilly et al., "Transcatheter Fiberoptic Laser Coagulation of Blood Vessels," *Radiology* 142: 777-780, Mar. 1982.
- Drago, Mazza et al., "The Use of Argon Laser in the Treatment of Ideopathic Varices in the Lower Limbs," *Minerva Angiologica*, vol. 19, 1993.
- Sattler, "Outpatient Surgery for Varicose Veins Under Tumescent Local Anaesthesia," presented at the World Congress of Phlebology, Sydney, Australia, Sep. 1998.
- Korolenko, "Morphological Changes in Tissues After Novocain Solutions Are Injected Into Them Under Pressure," Medical Affairs, State Medical Publishing House, Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, 1958.
- Klein, "Tumescent Technique Chronicles: Local Anesthesia, Liposuction and Beyond," *Dermatol. Surg.* 1995:21, pp. 449-457.
- Smith, "Tumescent Anesthesia in Ambulatory Phlebectomy," abstract presented at the Nov. 1997 Congress of the North American Society of Phlebology, Palm Desert, California.
- VNUS Medical Technologies, "Endovenous Vein Shrinkage for the Treatment of Venous Insufficiency," slides presented at the Nov. 1997 Congress of the North American Society of Phlebology, Palm Desert, California.
- Sommer et al., "Tumescent Local Anesthesia: Practical Application," pp. V-XIV, 40-44, 156-184, Dec. 8, 1998.
- Transcript of Deposition of Mitchel P. Goldman, M.D. of Sep. 5, 2006; pp. 18-36.

\* cited by examiner

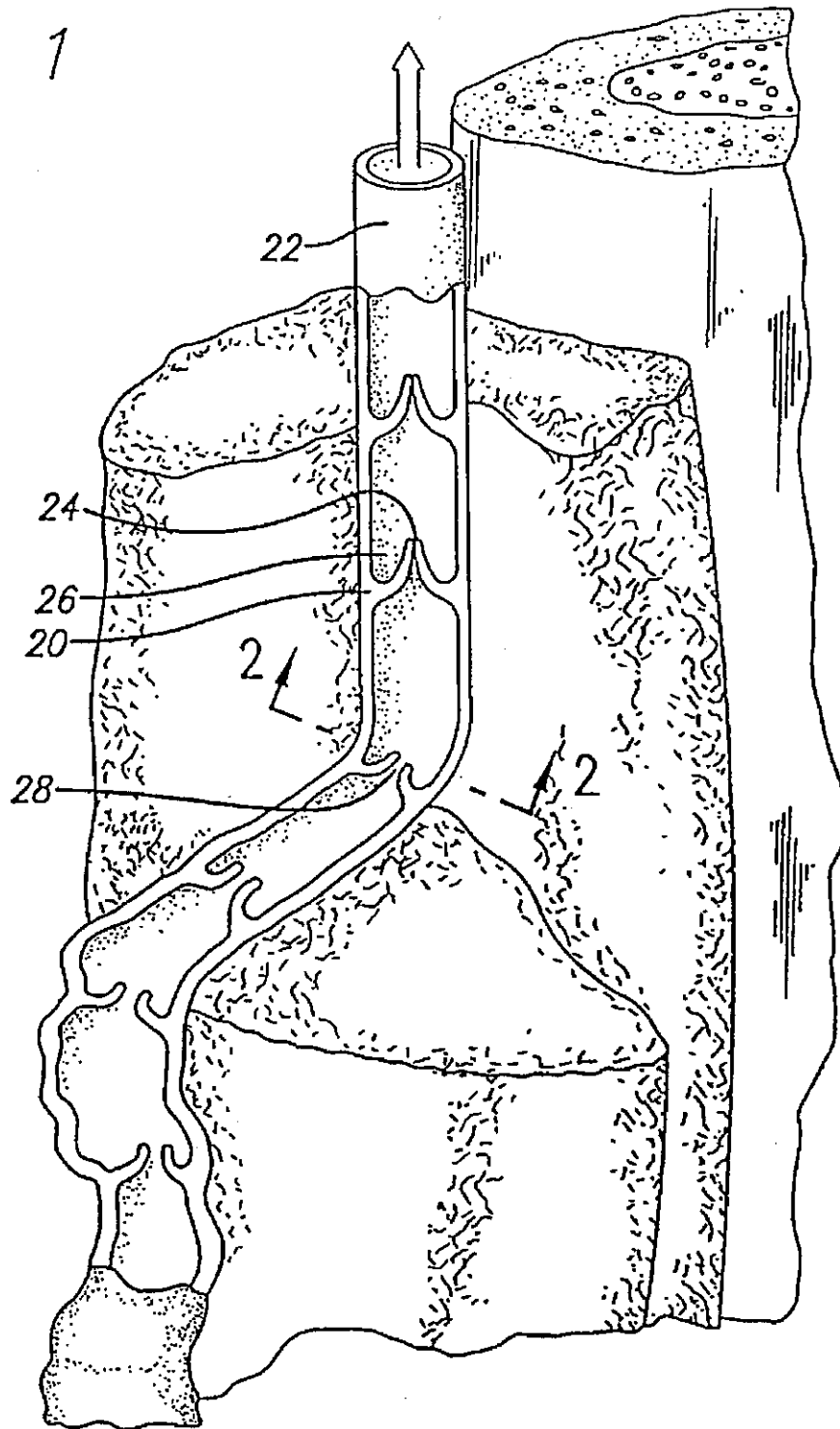
U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2008

Sheet 1 of 6

US 7,396,355 B2

FIG. 1



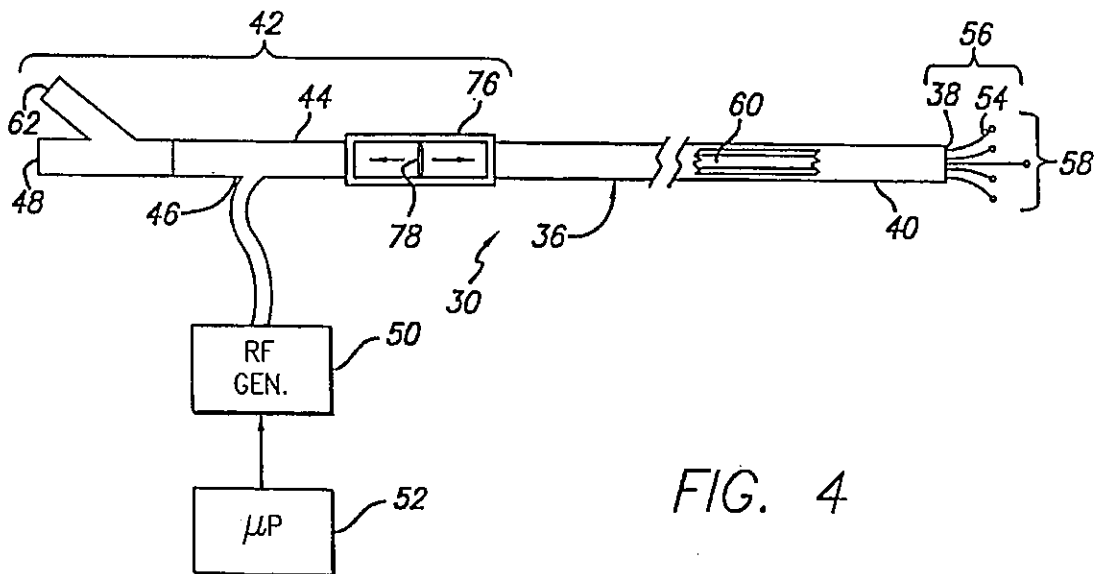
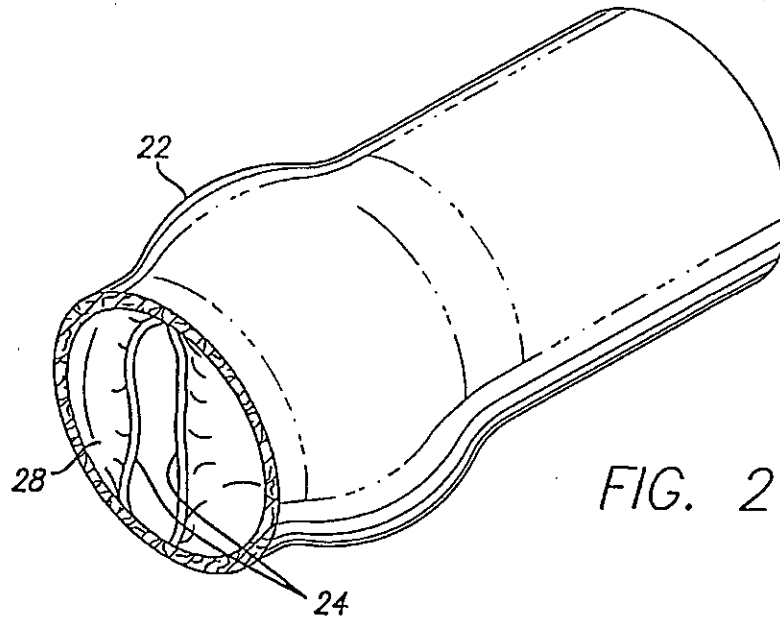


U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2008

Sheet 2 of 6

US 7,396,355 B2



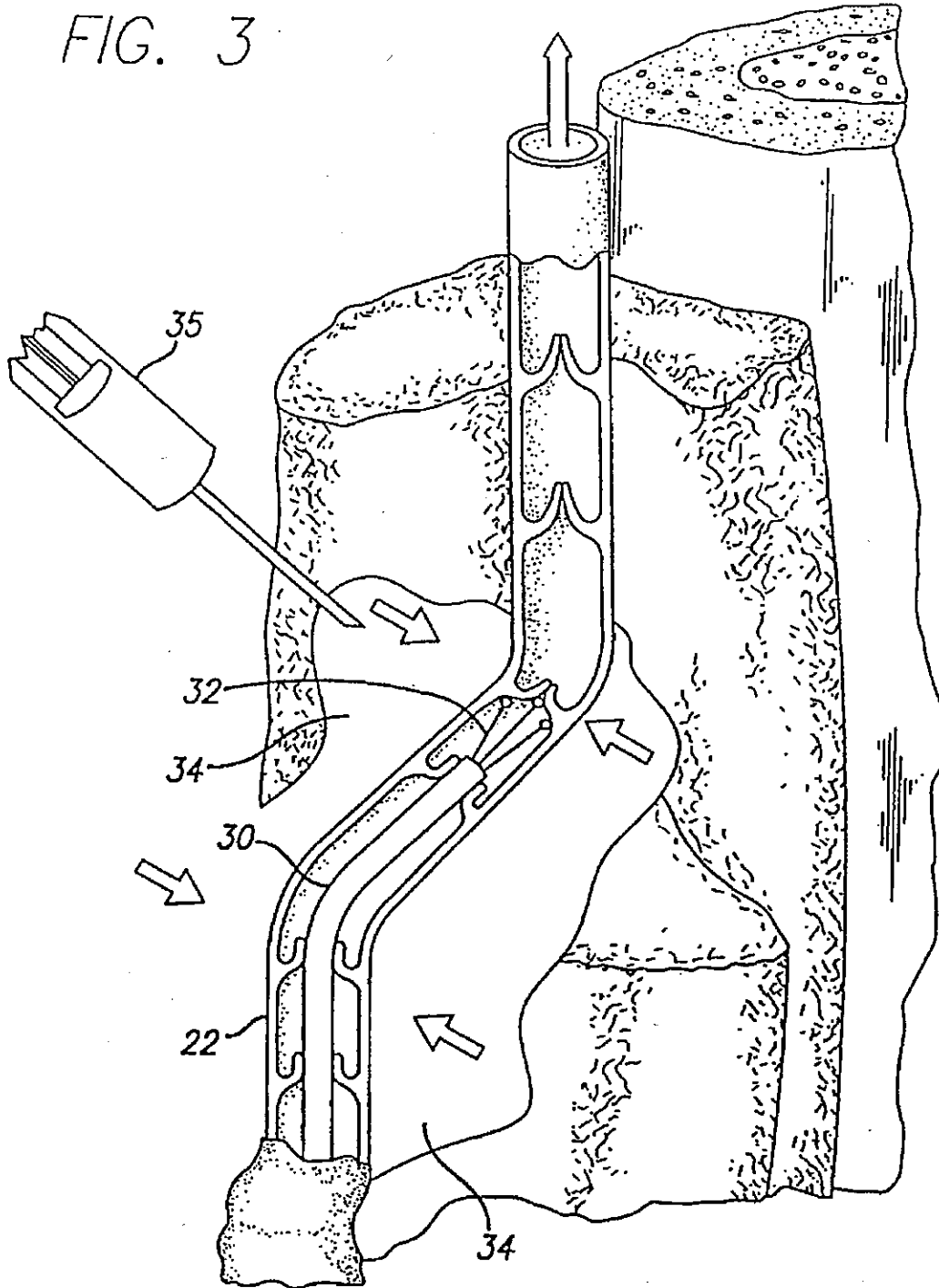
U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2008

Sheet 3 of 6

US 7,396,355 B2

FIG. 3

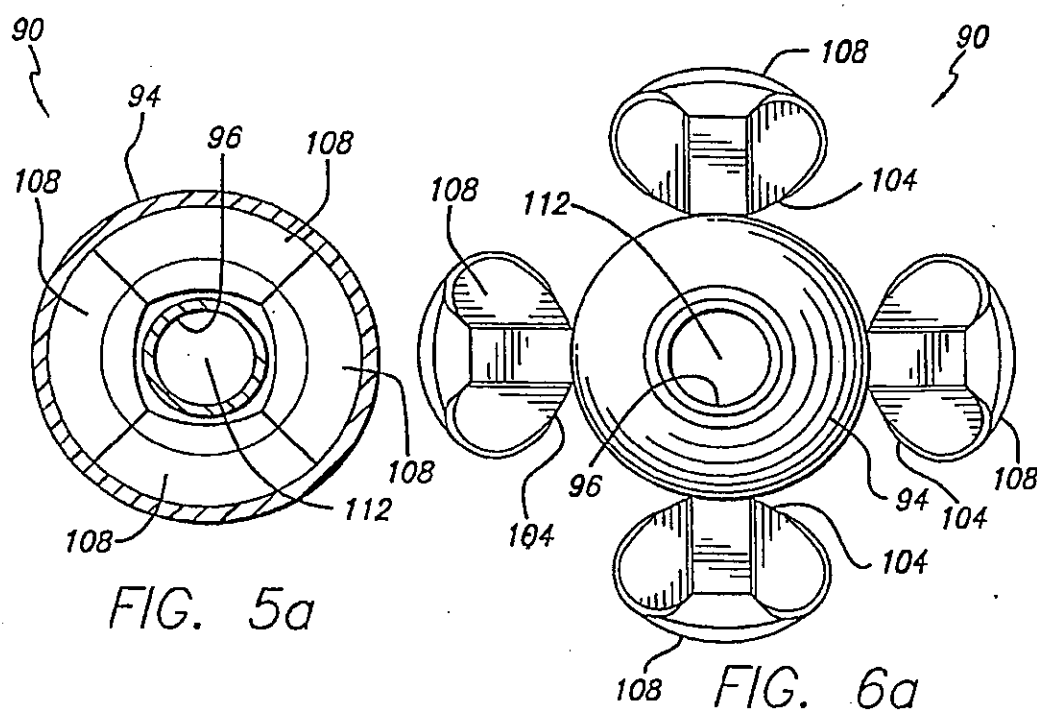
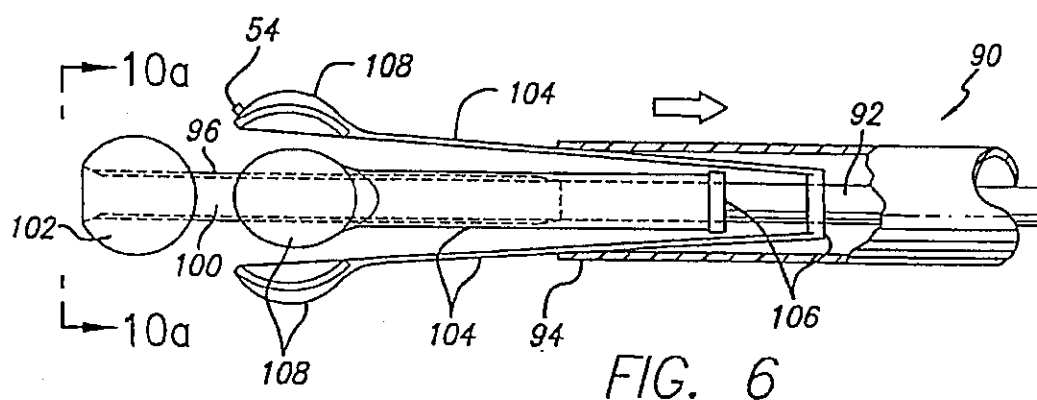
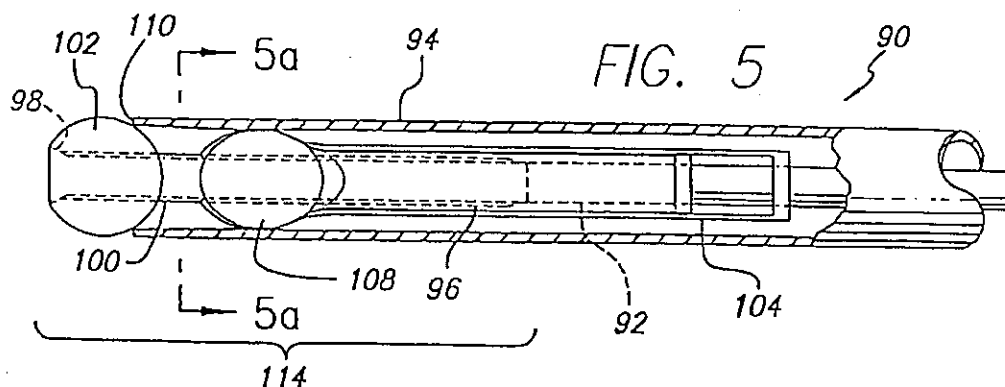


## U.S. Patent

**Jul. 8, 2008**

Sheet 4 of 6

US 7,396,355 B2



U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2008

Sheet 5 of 6

US 7,396,355 B2

FIG. 7

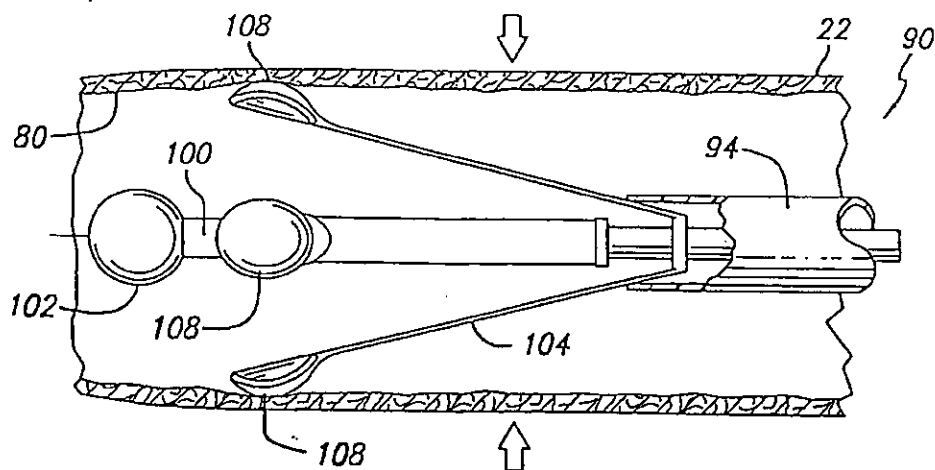


FIG. 8

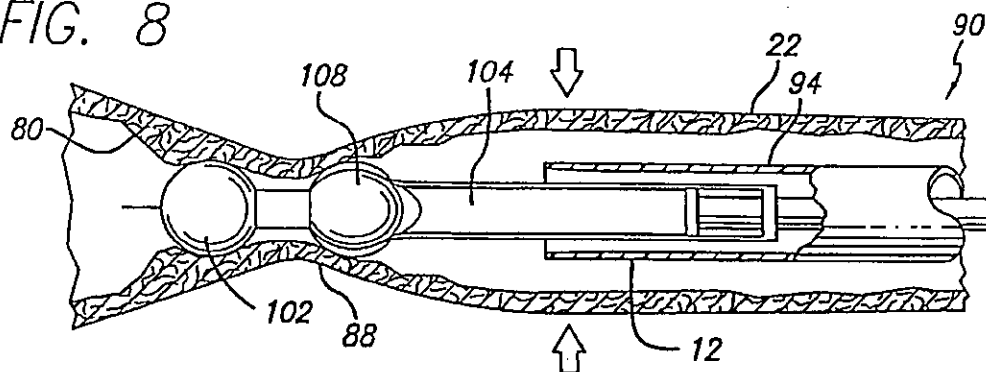
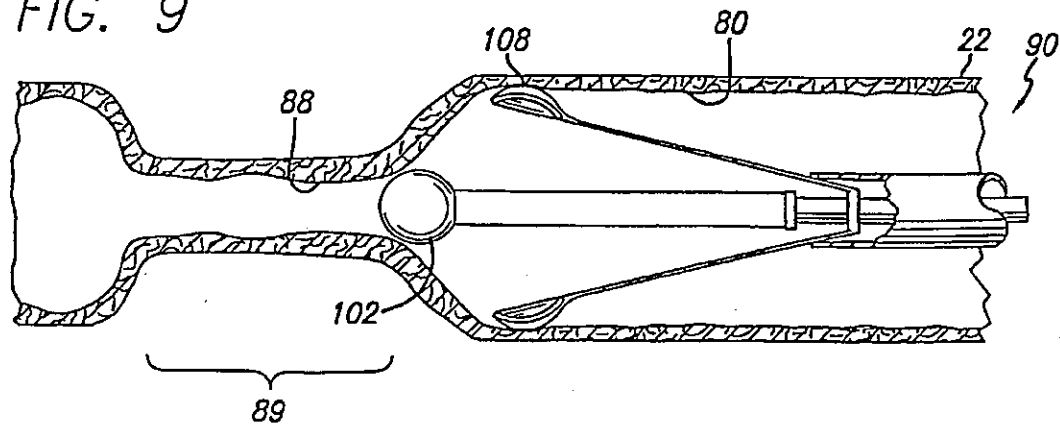


FIG. 9

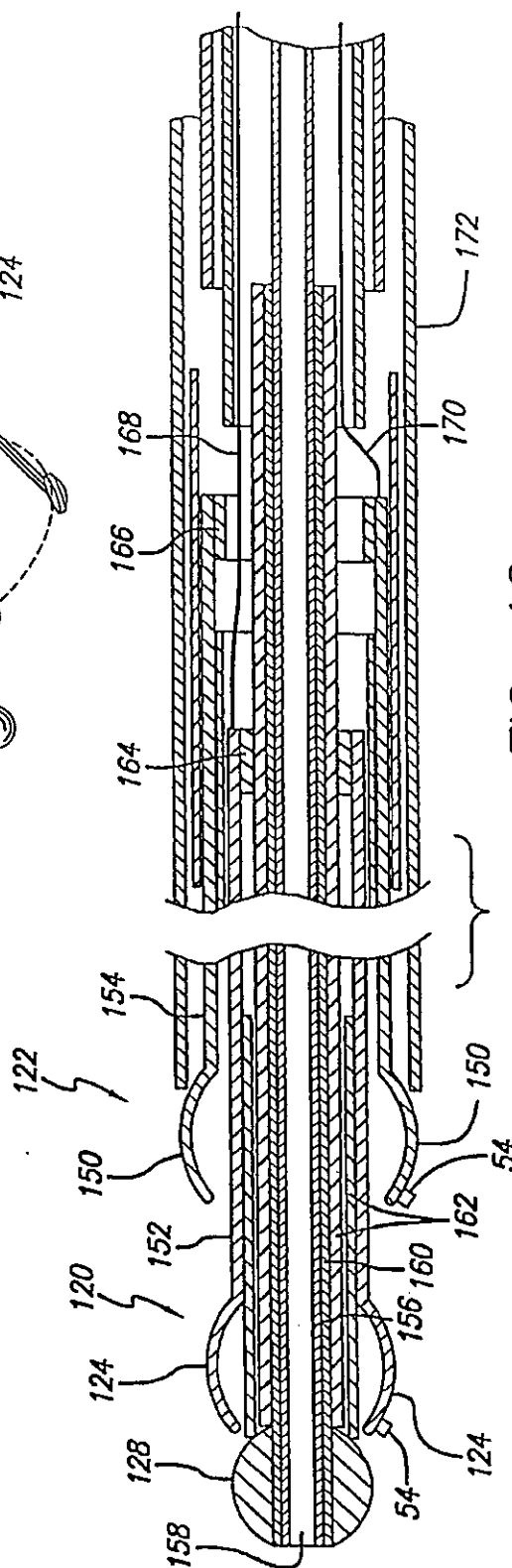
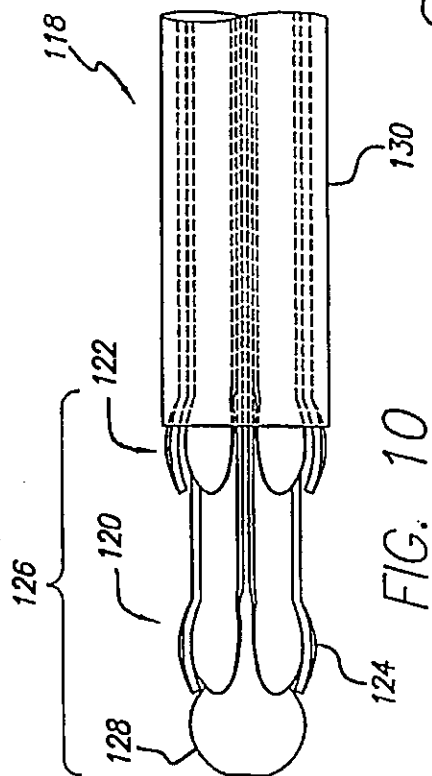
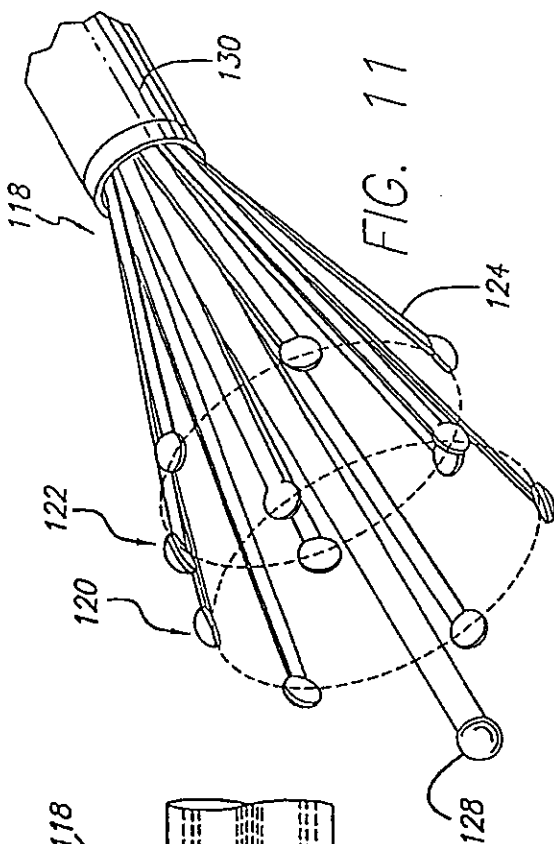


U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2008

Sheet 6 of 6

US 7,396,355 B2



US 7,396,355 B2

1

# METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR APPLYING ENERGY TO BIOLOGICAL TISSUE INCLUDING THE USE OF TUMESCENT TISSUE COMPRESSION

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 09/899,885 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,752,803) filed on Jul. 6, 2001, which is a continuation of application Ser. No. 09/267,127 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,258,084) filed on Mar. 10, 1999, which is a continuation-in-part of application Ser. No. 09/138,472 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,179,832) filed on Aug. 21, 1998, which is a continuation-in-part of application Ser. No. 08/927,251 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,200,312) filed on Sep. 11, 1997 the disclosures of which are all hereby incorporated by reference.

## BACKGROUND

The invention relates generally to a method and apparatus for applying energy to shrink a hollow anatomical structure, such as a fallopian tube or a vein, including but not limited to, superficial and perforator veins, hemorrhoids, and esophageal varices. In some particular aspects, the invention relates to a method for compressing an anatomical structure prior to the application of energy and apparatus including an electrode device having multiple leads for applying energy to the compressed structure to cause it to durably assume its compressed form.

The human venous system of the lower limbs consists essentially of the superficial venous system and the deep venous system with perforating veins connecting the two systems. The superficial system includes the long or great saphenous vein and the short saphenous vein. The deep venous system includes the anterior and posterior tibial veins which unite to form the popliteal vein, which in turn becomes the femoral vein when joined by the short saphenous vein.

The venous system contains numerous one-way valves for directing blood flow back to the heart such as those valves 20 located in the vein 22 shown in FIG. 1. The arrow leading out the top of the vein represents the antegrade flow of blood back to the heart. Venous valves are usually bicuspid valves, with each cusp 24 forming a sack or reservoir 26 for blood which, under retrograde blood pressure, forces the free surfaces of the cusps together to prevent retrograde flow of the blood and allows only antegrade blood flow to the heart. Competent venous valves prevent retrograde flow as blood is pushed forward through the vein lumen and back to the heart. When an incompetent valve 28 is in the flow path, the valve is unable to close because the cusps do not form a proper seal and retrograde flow of the blood cannot be stopped. When a venous valve fails, increased strain and pressure occur within the lower venous sections and overlying tissues, sometimes leading to additional valvular failure. Incompetent valves may result from the stretching of dilated veins. As the valves fail, increased pressure is imposed on the lower veins and the lower valves of the vein, which in turn exacerbates the failure of these lower valves. A cross-sectional perspective view of a dilated vein with an incompetent valve 28 taken along lines 2-2 of FIG. 1 is illustrated in FIG. 2. The valve cusps 24 can experience some separation at the commissure due to the thinning and stretching of the vein wall at the cusps. Two venous conditions which often result from valve failure are varicose veins and more symptomatic chronic venous insufficiency.

The varicose vein condition includes dilation and tortuosity of the superficial veins of the lower limbs, resulting in unsightly discoloration, pain, swelling, and possibly ulcer-

2

ation. Varicose veins often involve incompetence of one or more venous valves, which allow reflux of blood within the superficial system. This can also worsen deep venous reflux and perforator reflux. Current treatments of vein insufficiency include surgical procedures such as vein stripping, ligation, and occasionally, vein-segment transplant.

Chronic venous insufficiency involves an aggravated condition of varicose veins which may be caused by degenerative weakness in the vein valve segment, or by hydrodynamic forces acting on the tissues of the body, such as the legs, ankles, and feet. As the valves in the veins fail, the hydrostatic pressure increases on the next venous valves down, causing those veins to dilate. As this continues, more venous valves will eventually fail. As they fail, the effective height of the column of blood above the feet and ankles grows, and the weight and hydrostatic pressure exerted on the tissues of the ankle and foot increases. When the weight of that column reaches a critical point as a result of the valve failures, ulcerations of the ankle begin to form, which start deep and eventually come to the surface. These ulcerations do not heal easily because of poor venous circulation due to valvular incompetence in the deep venous system and other vein systems.

Other related venous conditions include dilated hemorrhoids and esophageal varices. Pressure and dilation of the hemorrhoid venous plexus may cause internal hemorrhoids to dilate and/or prolapse and be forced through the anal opening. If a hemorrhoid remains prolapsed, considerable discomfort, including itching and bleeding, may result. The venous return from these prolapsed hemorrhoids becomes obstructed by the anal sphincters, which gives rise to a strangulated hemorrhoid. Thromboses result where the blood within the prolapsed vein becomes clotted. This extremely painful condition can cause edema and inflammation.

Varicose veins called esophageal varices can form in the venous system with submucosa of the lower esophagus, and bleeding can occur from the dilated veins. Bleeding or hemorrhaging may result from esophageal varices, which can be difficult to stop and, if untreated, could develop into a life threatening condition. Such varices erode easily, and lead to a massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage.

Ligation of a fallopian tube (tubal ligation) for sterilization or other purposes is typically performed by laparoscopy. A doctor severs the fallopian tube or tubes and ties the ends. External cauterization or clamps may also be used. General or regional anesthetic must be used. All of the above are performed from outside the fallopian tube.

Hemorrhoids and esophageal varices may be alleviated by intra-luminal ligation. As used herein, "ligation" or "intra-luminal ligation" comprises the occlusion, collapse, or closure of a lumen or hollow anatomical structure by the application of energy from within the lumen or structure. As used herein, "ligation" or "intra-luminal ligation" includes electro-ligation. In the case of fallopian tube ligation, it would be desirable to perform the ligation from within the fallopian tube itself (intra-fallopian tube) to avoid the trauma associated with external methods.

Ligation involves the cauterization or coagulation of a lumen using energy, such as that applied through an electrode device. An electrode device is introduced into the lumen and positioned so that it contacts the lumen wall. Once properly positioned, RF energy is applied to the wall by the electrode device thereby causing the wall to shrink in cross-sectional diameter. In the case of a vein, a reduction in cross-sectional diameter of the vein, as for example from 5 mm (0.2 in) to 1 mm (0.04 in), significantly reduces the flow of blood through a lumen and results in an effective occlusion. Although not

US 7,396,355 B2

3

required for effective occlusion or ligation, the vein wall may completely collapse thereby resulting in a full-lumen obstruction that blocks the flow of blood through the vein. Likewise, a fallopian tube may collapse sufficiently to effect a sterilization of the patient.

One apparatus for performing ligation includes a tubular shaft having an electrode device attached at the distal tip. Running through the shaft, from the distal end to the proximal end, are electrical leads. At the proximal end of the shaft, the leads terminate at an electrical connector, while at the distal end of the shaft the leads are connected to the electrode device. The electrical connector provides the interface between the leads and a power source, typically an RF generator. The RF generator operates under the guidance of a control device, usually a microprocessor.

The ligation apparatus may be operated in either a monopolar or bipolar configuration. In the monopolar configuration, the electrode device consists of an electrode that is either positively or negatively charged. A return path for the current passing through the electrode is provided externally from the body, as for example by placing the patient in physical contact with a large low-impedance pad. The current flows between the ligation device and low impedance pad through the patient. In a bipolar configuration, the electrode device consists of a pair of electrodes having different potentials (such as a pair of oppositely-charged electrodes) of approximately equal size, separated from each other, such as by a dielectric material or by a spatial relationship. Accordingly, in the bipolar mode, the return path for current is provided by an electrode or electrodes of the electrode device itself. The current flows from one electrode, through the tissue, and returns by way of the another electrode.

To protect against tissue damage, i.e., charring, due to cauterization caused by overheating, a temperature sensing device is typically attached to the electrode device, although it may be located elsewhere. The temperature sensing device may be a thermocouple that monitors the temperature of the venous tissue. The thermocouple interfaces with the RF generator and the controller through the shaft and provides electrical signals to the controller which monitors the temperature and adjusts the energy applied to the tissue through the electrode device accordingly.

The overall effectiveness of a ligation apparatus is largely dependent on the electrode device contained within the apparatus. Monopolar and bipolar electrode devices that comprise solid devices having a fixed shape and size can limit the effectiveness of the ligating apparatus for several reasons. Firstly, a fixed-size electrode device typically contacts the vein wall at only one point or a limited arc on the circumference or inner diameter of the vein wall. As a result, the application of RF energy is highly concentrated within the contacting venous tissue, while the flow of RF current through the remainder of the venous tissue is disproportionately weak. Accordingly, the regions of the vein wall near the area of contact collapse at a faster rate than other regions of the vein wall, resulting in non-uniform shrinkage of the vein lumen. Furthermore, the overall strength of the occlusion may be inadequate and the lumen may eventually reopen. To avoid an inadequate occlusion, RF energy must be applied for an extended period of time so that the current flows through the tissue, including through the tissue not in contact with the electrode, generating thermal energy and causing the tissue to shrink sufficiently. Extended applications of energy have a greater possibility of increasing the temperature of the blood to an unacceptable level and may result in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable. Furthermore, it is

4

possible for the undesirable coagulum to form when utilizing an expandable electrode as well. This problem can be prevented by exsanguination of the vein prior to the treatment, as well as through the use of temperature-regulated power delivery. As used herein, "exsanguination" comprises the removal of all or some significant portion of blood in a particular area.

Secondly, the effectiveness of a ligating apparatus having a fixed-size electrode device is limited to certain sized veins. An attempt to ligate a vein having a diameter that is substantially greater than the fixed-size electrode device can result in not only non-uniform heating of the vein wall as just described, but also insufficient shrinkage of the vein diameter. The greater the diameter of the vein relative to the diameter of the electrode device, the weaker the energy applied to the vein wall at points distant from the point of electrode contact. Also, larger diameter veins must shrink a larger percentage for effective occlusion to occur. Accordingly, the vein wall is likely to not completely collapse prior to the venous tissue becoming over-cauterized at the point of electrode contact. While coagulation as such may initially occlude the vein, such occlusion may only be temporary in that the coagulated blood may eventually dissolve recanalizing the vein. One solution for this inadequacy is an apparatus having interchangeable electrode devices with various diameters. Another solution is to have a set of catheters having different sizes so that one with the correct size for the diameter of the target vein will be at hand when needed. Such solutions, however, are both economically inefficient and can be tedious to use. It is desirable to use a single catheter device that is usable with a large range of sizes of lumina.

A technique of reducing the diameter of the lumen of a vein at least close to the final desired diameter before applying energy to the vein has been found to aid in the efficiency of these types of procedures. The pre-reduction in vein diameter assists in pre-shaping the vein to be molded into a ligated state. The compression also exsanguinates the vein and forces blood away from the treatment site, thus preventing coagulation. One valuable technique employed is that of compressing the vein contained within a limb by applying external hydraulic pressure, via a pressure tourniquet, to the limb. Unfortunately there are some areas of the body to which a pressure tourniquet cannot be applied, such as the sapheno-femoral junction, which is above the thigh proximate the groin area. Furthermore, there are sites where a pressure tourniquet may be ineffective such as: the popliteal junction and other areas around the knee; and the ankle area (typically the posterior arch vein and some of the lower coxect perforators).

There exists a technique referred to as tumescent anesthesia that has been used in connection with liposuction procedures. The word "tumescent" means swollen or firm. This technique is accomplished by subcutaneously delivering into target fatty tissue a large volume of saline solution containing diluted Lidocaine and Epinephrine (adrenaline), a vasoconstrictive drug. The injected area then becomes locally anesthetized, and the adrenaline temporarily constricts the capillaries and other blood vessels. The tumescence-inducing fluid, or "tumescent fluid" is injected under pressure which causes the target fatty tissue to become swollen and firm. The tumescent fluid is typically pumped into the pocket of fat in order to numb the area, loosen the fat, and constrict the blood vessels to minimize bleeding or bruising in a liposuction procedure. The anesthetic and other agents in the tumescent solution should be allowed sufficient time to diffuse and take full effect throughout the target tissue. After surgery, patients may leave without assistance, and often return to their regular routine within several days. With the tumescent technique, postoperative discomfort is significantly reduced. The local



US 7,396,355 B2

5

anesthesia often remains in the treated tissue for 16 hours after surgery. Employing a technique of utilizing tumescent anesthesia in conjunction with ligation or radial lumen shrinkage less than ligation may provide benefits.

Although described above in terms of a vein, the concepts are generally applicable to other hollow anatomical structures in the body as well. The above description has been generally confined to veins in consideration of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

Hence those skilled in the art have recognized a need for an improved method and apparatus that can be used on areas of the body to shrink and ligate hollow anatomical structures. A need has also been recognized for an improved method and apparatus to pre-compress and exsanguinate a hollow anatomical structure while providing anesthetic and insulation benefits during the radial shrinkage of the hollow anatomical structure. The invention fulfills these needs and others.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to a method and apparatus for applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure such as a vein, to shrink the structure. In a more detailed aspect, the invention is directed to pre-compressing and exsanguinating a hollow anatomical structure while providing anesthetic and insulation benefits during a procedure of shrinking the hollow anatomical structure.

In another aspect of the present invention, a method comprises providing fluid to tissue surrounding a hollow anatomical structure to induce tumescence of the tissue and consequent compression of the hollow anatomical structure during a procedure of applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure from within the structure. In a more detailed aspect, the method comprises introducing into the hollow anatomical structure a catheter having a working end and at least one electrode at the working end; placing the electrode into contact with the inner wall of the pre-compressed hollow anatomical structure and applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site via the electrode until the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the pre-compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the solution into the tissue.

In another aspect in accordance with the invention, tumescent fluid is injected in the tissue surrounding the hollow anatomical structure along a selected length of the hollow anatomical structure. The electrode is then moved along a site within the selected length while continuously applying energy to result in a lengthy occlusion. In another approach, after an initial application of energy to one site internal to the hollow anatomical structure within the selected length, the electrode is moved down a given length of the hollow anatomical structure and energy is applied at that adjacent site. For the site where energy is applied, the hollow anatomical structure durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the pre-compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the solution into the tissue.

In a more detailed aspect, tumescent anesthesia fluid is injected or otherwise provided to tissue contiguous with a vein to compress the vein to about a desired final diameter. A catheter having an energy application device, such as expandable electrodes, is introduced internal to the vein at a site within the compressed portion of the vein and energy is applied to the internal vein wall by the application device. Sufficient energy is applied to cause the vein to durably assume the compressed diameter such that when the effects of the tumescent anesthesia fluid are dissipated, the vein retains the compressed diameter.

6

Alternate means to prevent coagulum formation include fluid displacement of blood at the treatment site, or exsanguination by inducing self-constriction of the vessel. In the latter, self-constriction includes, but is not limited to, intraluminal delivery of a vasoconstrictive drug. Self-constriction also aids in pre-shaping the vein for ligation, as discussed previously. If the fluid delivered to the site is a sclerosant, the ligation effects would be further enhanced.

In further aspects, energy is applied to effectively occlude the treatment site. Further, the energy application device is moved along the treatment site while performing the step of applying energy so as to result in a lengthy occlusion of the treatment site. The treatment site may collapse around the energy application device as it is being moved. In yet further detail, fluid is delivered from within the hollow structure to the treatment site. This fluid may be used to exsanguinate the treatment site. Such fluid may be from the following group: saline; a vasoconstrictive agent; a sclerosing agent; a high impedance fluid; and heparin.

In another aspect, temperatures are sensed at two separate locations on the energy application device, and the temperature signals are averaged to determine the temperature at the site. In further detailed aspects, electrical energy is applied to the inner wall of the treatment site with an electrode, the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall. With the electrode being in apposition with the inner wall, the method further comprises the steps of applying electrical energy with the electrode to effectively occlude the treatment site at the electrode, and moving the electrode along the treatment site while maintaining the electrode in apposition with the vein wall while performing the step of applying energy to effectively occlude the treatment site so as to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site. Sufficient energy is applied to collapse the hollow anatomical structure around the energy application device as it is being moved along the treatment site to result in a lengthy effective occlusion of the treatment site.

In yet a further aspect, apposition of the energy application device with the inner wall of the hollow anatomical structure is determined by monitoring the impedance experienced by the energy application device.

These and other aspects and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the following more detailed description, when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings which illustrate, by way of example, embodiments of the invention.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows a cross-sectional view of a vein having competent valves and having a dilated section with incompetent venous valves in a lower limb which are to be treated in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 2 shows a representative view of a venous section with an incompetent valve from FIG. 1 taken along lines 2-2 which is to be treated in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 3 is a cross-sectional view of the vein of FIG. 1 after the vein has been compressed, although not to full occlusion, by the injection of a tumescent anesthesia fluid in tissue surrounding the vein showing a catheter including an expandable electrode device prior to the application of energy to the vein;

FIG. 4 is a diagram of an energy application system that may be used in conjunction with the method of the present invention, depicting a partial cutaway view of the first embodiment of the catheter showing both the working end

US 7,396,355 B2

7

and the connecting end with an RF generator and a microprocessor connected at the connection end;

FIG. 5 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of an embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 5a is an end view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter taken along line 5a-5a of FIG. 5;

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter of FIGS. 5 and 5a depicting the electrodes in a fully expanded position;

FIG. 6a is an end view of the working end of the embodiment of the catheter taken along line 6a-6a of FIG. 6;

FIG. 7 is a cross-sectional view of a vein after the vein has been compressed, although not to full occlusion, by tumescent anesthesia fluid, the vein containing the catheter of FIG. 5 with the electrodes in apposition with the vein;

FIG. 8 is a cross-sectional view of the compressed vein containing the catheter of FIG. 5 where the vein is being ligated by the application of energy from the electrodes;

FIG. 9 is a partial cross-sectional view of the vein wall of FIG. 8 showing a lengthy effective occlusion made by moving the electrodes along the treatment site of the vein while maintaining the electrodes in apposition and continuing to apply energy to the vein wall.

FIG. 10 is a side view of an embodiment of an electrode catheter having two pluralities of longitudinally-separated expandable electrodes in a retracted condition;

FIG. 11 is a side view of the embodiment of the electrode catheter of FIG. 10 with both pluralities of the electrodes in expanded configurations; and

FIG. 12 is a partial cross-sectional view of the embodiment of an electrode catheter of FIGS. 10 and 11.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

As shown in the exemplary drawings, the invention is directed toward the intravenous treatment of veins using a catheter to deliver at least one electrode to a venous treatment site. As used herein, like reference numerals will designate similar elements in the various embodiments of the present invention to be discussed. In addition, unless otherwise noted, the term "working end" will refer to the direction toward the treatment site in the patient, and the term "connecting end" will refer to the direction away from the treatment site in the patient. The invention will be described in relation to the treatment of the venous system of the lower limbs. It is to be understood, however, that the invention is not limited thereto and may be employed intraluminally to treat veins in other areas of the body such as hemorrhoids, esophageal varices, and venous-drainage-impotence of the penis. Furthermore, although the invention will be described as using RF energy from the electrode, it is to be understood that other forms of energy such as microwaves, ultrasound, direct current, circulating heated fluid, radiant light, and lasers can be used, and that the thermal energy generated from a resistive coil or curie point element may be used as well.

Turning to FIG. 3, one preferred method of the present invention can be performed using the catheter 30 to deliver an expandable electrode device 32 (partially shown) to a venous treatment site in order to ligate the vein. Instead of compressing the tissue surrounding the treatment site via a pressure tourniquet, a tumescent anesthesia technique can be used to inject a dilute anesthetic and vasoconstrictive solution into the tissue surrounding the vein to be treated. The tumescent solution preferably includes mostly saline solution, with a local anesthetic such as Lidocaine, and a vasoconstrictive

8

drug such as Epinephrine. The tumescent solution causes the surrounding tissue 34 to become swollen which compresses the vein 22, as indicated by the arrows, close to occlusion (in this case) or to occlusion. Sufficient tumescent solution should be delivered into the tissue surrounding the vein to compress and exsanguinate the vein. Before injecting the tumescent solution, the catheter 30 is placed within the vein at the treatment site, with the expandable electrode device retracted.

The solution is typically infused with a peristaltic pump. However, 60 cc or 100 cc syringes 35 can be used. Another alternative is an IV bag with a pressure cuff. Large volumes are typically delivered into the perivenal area via a large cannula. Sites are typically located 10 cm apart down the leg. Usually there are four or five delivery sites. The external result is a leg that appears inflated. The internal result is compressed veins plus an anesthetized leg. The expandable electrode device is then expanded into apposition with the venous tissue after compression of the vein. Energy such as high frequency RF energy is applied from the expandable electrode device to the venous tissue until the vein durably assumes dimensions less than or equal to the compressed dimensions caused by the injection of the tumescent solution into the tissue.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section or treatment site, the electrode may be retracted and the catheter moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated. Ultrasound guidance can be used to monitor the progress of the procedure.

One preferred embodiment of the catheter for delivering an expandable energy application device or expandable electrode device 56 to the venous treatment site is illustrated in FIG. 4. The catheter 30 includes an expandable energy application device 56 which in this embodiment, comprises an array of electrodes 58, an outer sheath 36 having a distal orifice 38 at its working end 40. The connector end 42 of the outer sheath is attached to a handle 44 that includes electrical connector 46. The handle additionally includes a guide wire port 48. The connector 46 is for interfacing with a power source, typically an RF generator 50, and a microprocessor controller 52. The power source and microprocessor controller are usually contained in one unit. The microprocessor controller controls the RF generator in response to external commands and data from a temperature sensor 54, such as a thermocouple, or temperature sensors that may be positioned at an intraluminal venous treatment site.

The catheter 30 includes the expandable electrode device 56 that moves in and out of the outer sheath by way of the distal orifice 38 in this embodiment, although in other embodiments the device 56 may expand from and contract into the catheter 30 at other locations. The expandable electrode device 56 includes a plurality of electrodes 58 which can be expanded by moving the outer sheath 36 relative to the electrodes. Although FIG. 4 illustrates a plurality of electrodes 58 surrounding a single central electrode, different electrode configurations may be used.

Contained within the outer sheath 36 is an inner sheath 60 or inner member as shown in the cutaway portion of FIG. 4. A fluid port 62 communicates with the interior of the outer sheath. The catheter 30 can be periodically flushed out with saline through the fluid port. The flushing fluid can travel between the outer sheath and the inner sheath. The fluid port also allows for the delivery of drug therapies. Flushing out the catheter prevents the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter. The treatment area or site of the vein can be flushed with a fluid such as saline, or a high impedance dielectric fluid, in order to evacuate blood from

US 7,396,355 B2

9

the treatment area of the vein so as to prevent the formation of coagulum or thrombosis. The use of a high impedance dielectric fluid can minimize unintended heating effects away from the treatment area. The dielectric fluid directs the current of RF energy toward the vein wall. In addition, a vasoconstrictive agent may be applied to shrink the vein, heparin may be applied for coagulation avoidance, and a sclerosing agent may be applied to assist in ligation. These drugs or agents may be applied before, during, or after the catheter is used to heat the vein wall.

In one preferred embodiment, the catheter 30 includes a lumen which begins at the distal tip 55, proximate the working end 40, and runs substantially along the axis of the inner member before terminating at the guide wire port 48 of the handle 44. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen of the catheter for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. Where the catheter is sized to treat smaller veins, the outer diameter of the catheter may not allow for a fluid flush between the outer sheath and the inner sheath 60. However, a fluid flush can be introduced through the guide wire port 48 in such an embodiment.

Turning again to FIG. 4, an actuator 76 controls the extension of the electrode device 56 through the distal orifice 38. The actuator may take the form of a switch, lever 78, threaded control knob, or other suitable mechanism, and is preferably one that can provide fine control over the movement of the outer sheath 36 or the inner sheath 60, as the case may be. In one embodiment of the invention, the actuator interfaces with the outer sheath to move it back and forth relative to the inner sheath. In another embodiment the actuator interfaces with the inner sheath to move it back and forth relative to the outer sheath. The relative position between the outer sheath and inner sheath is thus controlled, but other control approaches may be used.

In a preferred embodiment of a catheter 90 is illustrated in FIG. 5. An inner member 92 or sheath is contained within the outer sheath 94. The inner sheath is preferably constructed from a flexible polymer such as polyimide, polyethylene, or nylon, and can travel the entire length of the catheter. The majority of the catheter should be flexible so as to navigate the tortuous paths of the venous system. A hypotube having a flared distal end 98 and a circular cross-sectional shape is attached over the distal end of the inner sheath 92. The hypotube 96 is preferably no more than about two to three centimeters in length. The hypotube acts as part of a conductive secondary lead 100. An uninsulated conductive electrode sphere 102 is slipped over the hypotube. The flared distal end of the hypotube prevents the electrode sphere from moving beyond the distal end of the hypotube. The sphere is permanently affixed to the hypotube, such as by soldering the sphere both front and back on the hypotube. The majority of the surface of the electrode sphere remains uninsulated. The remainder of the hypotube is preferably insulated so that the sphere-shaped distal end can act as the electrode. For example, the hypotube can be covered with an insulating material such as a coating of parylene. The interior lumen of the hypotube is lined by the inner sheath 92 which is attached to the flared distal end of the hypotube by adhesive such as epoxy.

Surrounding the secondary lead 100 are a plurality of primary leads 104 that preferably have a flat rectangular strip shape and can act as arms. In one configuration, the strip shape is a width from 0.76 mm (0.03 in) to 1.00 mm (0.04 in) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005 in.). As illustrated in FIG. 6, the plurality of primary leads 104 is preferably connected to common conductive rings 106. This configuration maintains the position of the plurality of pri-

10

mary leads, while reducing the number of internal electrical connections. The conductive rings 106 are attached to the inner sheath 92. The position of the rings and the primary leads relative to the outer sheath 94 follows that of the inner sheath. As earlier described, the hypotube 96 of the secondary lead is also attached to the inner sheath. Two separate conductive rings can be used so that the polarity of different primary leads can be controlled separately. For example, adjacent primary leads can be connected to one of the two separate conductive rings so that the adjacent leads can be switched to have either opposite polarities or the same polarity. The rings are preferably spaced closely together, but remain electrically isolated from each other along the inner sheath. Both the rings and the hypotube are coupled with the inner sheath, and the primary leads are connected to the rings move together with the secondary lead while remaining electrically isolated from the secondary lead. Epoxy or another suitable adhesive can be used to attach the rings to the inner sheath. The primary leads that are connected to the rings alternate with each other along the circumference of the inner sheath. The insulation along the underside of the leads prevents an electrical short between the rings. FIG. 6a illustrates an end view of the working end of catheter 90 taken along line 6a-6a of FIG. 6.

The conductive rings 106 and the primary leads 104 are attached together to act as cantilevers where the ring forms the base and the rectangular primary leads operate as the cantilever arms. The primary leads are formed to have an arc or bend such that the primary leads act as arms that tend to spring outwardly away from the catheter 90 and toward the surrounding venous tissue. Insulation along the underside of the primary leads and the conductive rings prevents unintended electrical coupling therebetween. Alternately, the primary leads are formed straight and connected to the conductive rings at an angle such that the primary leads tend to expand or spring radially outward from the conductive rings. The angle at which the primary leads are attached to the conductive rings should be sufficient to force the primary distal ends and their electrodes 108 through blood and into apposition with the vein wall 80 but not enough to preclude vein shrinkage. In particular, the primary leads 104 are formed with enough strength, and are mounted or bent such that they expand outwardly into apposition with the inner wall of the vein. However, the force they develop in an outward direction is not strong enough to prevent radial shrinkage of the vein. As the vein shrinks, due to the heating caused by the energy delivered by the electrodes 108, the shrinking vein causes a contraction of the primary electrodes. Due to the outward force constantly exerted by the primary leads 104, the electrodes 108 remain in constant apposition with the vein wall as it shrinks.

Other properties of the primary leads, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead against the vein wall and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. The rectangular cross section of the primary leads can provide increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. The primary leads are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward due to the increased size of the rectangular lead in that sideways direction, and a uniform spacing between primary leads is more assured. Uniform spacing between the primary leads and the distal ends promotes uniform heating around the vein by the electrodes 108.

The distal ends of the primary leads 104 are uninsulated to act as the electrodes 108 having a rounded shape. In the embodiment shown, the shape is convex which may take the

US 7,396,355 B2

11

form of a spoon or hemispherical shape. The primary leads can be stamped to produce an integral shaped electrode at the distal end of the primary leads. The uninsulated outer portion of the distal end of the electrodes 108 which are to come into apposition with the wall of the vein is preferably rounded and convex. The flattened or non-convex inner portion of the distal end is insulated to minimize any unintended thermal effect, such as on the surrounding blood in a vein. The distal ends of the electrodes 108 are configured such that when the distal ends are forced toward the inner sheath 92, as shown in FIG. 5a, the distal ends combine to form a substantially spherical shape with a profile smaller than the spherical electrode 102 at the secondary distal end.

In one preferred embodiment as shown in FIG. 6, the electrodes 108 comprise a convex, square center section with semi-circular ends. It has been found that this "race track" configuration maximizes surface area of contact for the electrodes 108 shown.

The outer sheath 94 can slide over and surround the primary and secondary leads 100 and 104. The outer sheath includes an orifice 110 which is dimensioned to have approximately the same size as the spherical electrode 102 at the secondary distal end. A close or snug fit between the spherical electrode 102 and the orifice 110 of the outer sheath is achieved. This configuration provides an atraumatic tip for the catheter 90. The spherical electrode 102 is preferably slightly larger than the orifice 110. The inner diameter of the outer sheath is approximately the same as the diameter of the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 108.

A fluid port (not shown) can communicate with the interior of the outer sheath 94 so that fluid can be flushed between the outer sheath and inner sheath 92 as described above. Alternately, a fluid port can communicate with a central lumen 112 in the hypotube which can also accept a guide wire for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. It is to be understood that another lumen can be formed in the catheter to deliver fluid to the treatment site. The delivered fluid displaces or exsanguinates blood from the vein so as to avoid heating and coagulation of blood. The delivery of a dielectric fluid increases the surrounding impedance so that RF energy is directed into the tissue of the vein wall. An alternate fluid could be a sclerosing agent which could serve to displace blood or to further enhance occlusion of the vein when applied before, during, or after energy delivery. The fluid can also include an anticoagulant such as heparin which can chemically discourage the coagulation of blood at the treatment site. The catheter 90 can be periodically flushed with saline which can prevent the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter. The saline can be flushed through the central lumen 112 or between the inner and outer sheaths. If a central lumen is not desired, the lumen of the hypotube can be filled with solder.

The electrode device 114 can operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads have opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation is available. When the primary leads are commonly charged a monopolar electrode operation is available in combination with a large return electrode pad placed in contact with the patient. When the primary electrodes 108 are commonly charged or have a first potential, and a secondary electrode 102 has an opposite polarity or different potential, a bipolar electrode operation is available. More or fewer leads may be used. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the vein to be treated, as described above.

Although not shown, it is to be understood that the catheter 90 can include one or more temperature sensors, such as

12

thermocouples, mounted in place on an electrode 108 so that the sensor is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 108. (The sensor is shown in a raised position in the drawings for clarity of illustration only). The temperature sensor senses the temperature of the portion of the vein that is in apposition with the exposed electrode 108 surface. The sensor provides an indication of when shrinkage occurs (70 degrees C. or higher). Application of RF energy from the electrodes 108 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, such as the temperature at which venous tissue begins to cauterize. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein 22 is detected. This also helps to forestall overheating of the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 7 and 8, in the operation of this embodiment of a catheter 90, the catheter is inserted into a vein 22. Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or another technique may be used to direct and confirm the specific placement of the catheter in the vein. Impedance measurements can also be used to determine proper positioning of the catheter, particularly at the ostium of a vessel such as at the sapheno-femoral junction. The impedance will be low when the electrodes are in the blood stream. The catheter can then be moved until a high impedance value is obtained, indicating electrode contact with the vein wall. The vein wall 80 has been compressed by the introduction of tumescent anesthesia into the tissue surrounding the vein as indicated by the arrows. The arrows in the figures indicate the compression of the tissue. Unless stated otherwise, all drawing figures having arrows indicating tissue compression are not drawn to scale for purposes of clarity of illustration and are meant to be representations of the vein in a nearly fully occluded state.

The reduction in the vein 22 diameter caused by the tumescence of the tissue in contact with the treatment site assists in pre-shaping the vein to be molded to a ligated state. The compression also exsanguinates the vein and forces blood away from the treatment site, thus preventing coagulation.

The actuator 76 (FIG. 4) is then operated to retract the outer sheath 94 to expose leads 100 and 104. As the outer sheath no longer restrains the leads, the primary leads 104 move outward relative to the axis defined by the outer sheath, while the secondary lead 100 remains substantially linear along the axis defined by the outer sheath. The primary leads continue to move outward until their electrodes 108 are placed in apposition with the vein wall 80 and the outward movement of the primary leads is impeded. The primary electrodes 108 contact the vein wall along a generally circumferential area or band of the vein wall. This outward movement of the primary leads occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion so that the primary electrodes 108 are substantially evenly spaced. Alternately, the electrodes 86 can be spaced apart in a staggered fashion such that they do not lie in the same plane. For example, the adjacent electrodes 86 can extend different lengths from the catheter so that a smaller cross-sectional profile is achieved when the electrodes 86 are collapsed toward one another.

When the electrodes 102 and 108 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the RF generator 50 is activated to provide suitable RF energy. One suitable frequency is 510 kHz. One criterion used in selecting the frequency of the energy to be applied is the control desired over the spread, including the depth, of the thermal effect in the venous tissue. Another criterion is compatibility with filter circuits for



US 7,396,355 B2

13

eliminating RF noise from thermocouple signals. In a bipolar operation, the primary electrodes 108 are charged with one polarity opposite that of the secondary electrode 102. The coupling between oppositely charged primary and secondary electrodes produces RF fields therebetween, and form a symmetrical RF field pattern along a circumferential band of the vein wall 80 to achieve a uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy produces a thermal effect which causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein 22. The thermal effect produces structural transfiguration of the collagen fibrils in the vein. The collagen fibrils shorten and thicken in cross-section in response to the heat from the thermal effect. As shown in FIG. 8, the energy causes the vein wall 88 to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the primary lead electrodes 108. The primary lead electrodes are pressed closer together by the shrinking vein wall and assume a reduced profile shape which is sufficiently small so that the vein is effectively ligated.

The catheter 90 is pulled back while continuing energy delivery as shown in FIG. 9. Ligation as the catheter is being retracted produces a lengthy occlusion 89 which is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization than an acute point occlusion.

In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 102 remains neutral, while the primary electrodes 108 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form RF fields substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein. The thermal effect produced by those RF fields along the axial length of the vein wall 80 causes the vein wall to collapse around the primary lead electrodes. The electrode device is retracted as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall, as previously described. The electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters apart along the circumference of the vein wall 80, which defines the target vein diameter for a designed electrode catheter. Where the electrodes are substantially evenly spaced in a substantially symmetrical arrangement, and the spacing between the electrodes is maintained, a symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion.

Although not shown, in another embodiment, the primary leads may be mounted or otherwise configured such that they expand outwardly in an asymmetrical fashion. One purpose for an asymmetrical electrode arrangement is to only shrink a portion of the vein wall to achieve occlusion. Such may be desired in the case of preferentially shrinking a tributary branch or aneurysm on one side of the vein.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section or treatment site, the actuator 76 causes the primary leads 104 to return to the interior of the outer sheath 94. Once the primary leads are within the outer sheath, the catheter 90 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated.

As illustrated in FIGS. 10 and 11, another embodiment of an expandable electrode catheter 118 includes two sets of expandable electrode leads 120 and 122, although additional sets of electrode leads may be possible. The electrodes 124 of this embodiment are similar to the electrodes of the embodiment illustrated in FIG. 6 having electrodes with a rounded, convex, spoon-shaped contact area. Other shapes for the electrode may be used, such as ellipses, rounded, ovals, race

14

tracks, and others. Although only one electrode is indicated by numeral 124 in FIGS. 10 and 11, this is for purposes of clarity in the drawings only. All electrodes are meant to be indicated by numeral 124. While each set of electrode leads may include as few as two electrode leads, the illustrated embodiment includes six electrode leads per set, although more than six electrode leads may be used as well.

In the embodiment shown in FIGS. 10 and 11, the sets of electrode leads 120 and 122 are longitudinally separated from each other. Thus, the electrodes within each set of electrode leads are separated from one another radially and each of those electrodes is also separated from every electrode in the other set longitudinally, due to the longitudinal separation. There therefore exists radial separation and longitudinal separation of electrodes at the working end 126 of the catheter 118 in the arrangement shown in FIGS. 10 and 11.

With the configuration of electrode leads presented in FIGS. 10 and 11, greater flexibility exists in establishing current flows through the tissue of a patient. As in previous embodiments, the electrodes expand outwardly into contact with patient tissue. Where all the electrodes of a first set of electrode leads have the same polarity, there may be an odd number of electrodes in the set, or an even number. All electrodes in the set may be connected to a common connection point, such as the conducting ring 106 shown in FIG. 6. A single conductor from the connecting end of the catheter may power all electrodes of the set by a single connection to that conducting ring. All electrodes of a second set of electrode leads may also be commonly connected at a respective conducting ring but to a different electrical potential than the first set. Because two different electrical potentials exist at the working end of the catheter, energy will flow through the patient tissue between those sets of electrode leads and a bipolar arrangement will exist. Thus, a length of patient tissue, at least as long as the distance between the first and second sets of electrode leads, will receive the energy.

A monopolar arrangement may also be established if desired by setting all electrodes of all electrode leads to the same electrical potential and establishing a different electrical potential outside the patient, such as at a "backplate" in contact with the skin of the patient at a selected location. Energy from the working end 126 of the catheter will then flow through the patient to the return provided by the backplate.

In another arrangement in polarizing or controlling the electrical potential at the electrodes, the electrodes in the first set of electrode leads may be individually controlled so that there are electrode pairs of differing potentials in the set of leads. This would establish a bipolar approach within the first set of leads itself. If the electrodes of the second set of leads are likewise connected for different potentials among themselves, they too would provide a bipolar approach in their own set and currents would flow through patient tissue between the electrodes in each set of leads. If the electrodes having a first polarity in the first set are aligned with the electrodes having a different polarity in the second set of leads, energy would not only flow between the bipolar electrodes within the set but would also flow to the electrodes in the other set resulting in two bipolar arrangements at the single working end of the catheter. Patient tissue of a length at least as great as the distance between the first and second sets of electrode leads will receive energy as well as patient tissue between electrodes within each set of leads itself.

A further arrangement coupled with the bipolar approach just described would be to also use a backplate at a different electrical potential to provide further control over the energy flow through the patient's tissue. In this case, energy would

US 7,396,355 B2

15

flow between the electrodes within each set of leads, between electrodes in different sets of leads, and between electrodes and the backplate.

In yet a further arrangement, each of the electrodes may be individually connected to a power source (50, FIG. 4) and the electrical potential at each electrode can be individually controlled. This arrangement may yield even more precise control over the current densities through patient tissue. As an example, where less current flow is desired between certain electrodes of a set of leads but more current flow is desired between those electrodes and electrodes of a second set of leads, the potential between the electrodes of the same set may be reduced but the potential between those electrodes and the electrodes of the second set of leads may be increased resulting in the desired current flow densities. In the case where a backplate is also used, the electrodes may be controlled so that energy flows between such electrodes and the backplate. Because each electrode is individually controlled, the level of energy it imparts to the tissue at its location is controllable.

One factor that could affect the number of electrodes per set of electrode leads is the diameter of the vein being treated. The design of the contact pad for the electrode leads could also affect the desired number of electrodes for a given procedure.

In this embodiment, the electrode leads 120, 122 are formed to expand outwardly into apposition with the target tissue, yet as the target tissue shrinks, the electrodes maintain contact with that tissue and are moved inwardly by that tissue. Because of this arrangement, the leads compensate for variations in the diameter of the vein. They are therefore capable of maintaining apposition with the tissue whether or not compression of the vein or anatomical structure exists, such as by use of a pressure cuff or tourniquet or tumescence of the surrounding tissue.

The tip 128 of the electrode catheter 118 should have a hemispherical or another atraumatic shape. The tip 128 may be electrically neutral, and may be fabricated from a polymer or it may be fabricated of stainless steel. Because the tip 128 has a rounded shape and is located at the distal extreme of the catheter, it may perform a guiding function when introducing the catheter to the patient.

The double set of expandable electrodes can be used to ligate veins or other hollow anatomical structures in a manner similar to that previously described. The outer sheath 130 can be pulled back to allow the electrode to expand outwardly from the catheter and into apposition with the wall of the lumen being treated. The two sets of electrodes 120 and 122 apply energy to the lumen to cause it to shrink to a reduced diameter. The catheter can be moved or pulled back while the energy is being applied to treat an extended area of the lumen. When the desired area of the lumen or vein is treated (e.g., ligated) energy is no longer provided to the electrodes, and the outer sheath 130 is pushed forward to force the expanded electrodes back to an unexpanded condition. The catheter can then be removed from the patient, or another section of the vein can be treated.

The description of the component parts discussed above are for a catheter to be used in a vein ranging in size from 3 mm (0.12 in) to 10 mm (0.39 in) in diameter. It is to be understood that these dimensions do not limit the scope of the invention and are merely exemplary in nature. The dimensions of the component parts may be changed to configure a catheter that may be used in various-sized veins or other anatomical structures.

Referring now to FIG. 12, there is shown a partial cross-section view of the catheter of FIGS. 10 and 11. Two plurali-

16

ties of electrodes 120 and 122 are shown with the electrodes of the first plurality 120 being indicated by numeral 124 and the electrodes of the second plurality 122 being indicated by numeral 150. Each electrode is formed from an electrically-conductive electrode lead 152 and 154 respectively that is electrically insulated along its length except at its distal end at which point no insulation exists thus forming the electrode. Each lead has an outward bend (not shown). An inner tube 156 includes a lumen 158 through which fluid may flow for flush or other purposes, or through which a guide wire may be positioned. A hypotube 160 is positioned over the inner tube and layers of insulation 162 are mounted over the hypotube. The first plurality 120 of electrode leads 152 extend proximally to a first mounting ring 164 to which all are connected. The second plurality 122 of electrode leads 154 extend proximally to a second mounting ring 166 to which all are connected. The rings 164 and 166 are mounted over the hypotube insulation so that no electrical conduction path exists between the two. Wire conductors 168 and 170 extend from the proximal end of the catheter to each ring so that all electrode leads connected to a particular ring are interconnected electrically.

Alternate arrangements are possible and in one, alternating electrodes of a particular plurality are connected to two different rings. Each ring is separately connected to the power source and the polarities of the rings may therefore be made different to establish a bipolar approach within the plurality. One electrode may be a "+" polarity while the two adjacent electrodes may be a "-" polarity. In this case then, there would be a total of three rings for all electrodes. In another arrangement, both pluralities would have two rings for its respective electrodes with alternating electrodes connected to different rings so that bipolar approaches within each plurality may be established. In this case, there would exist a total of four rings for the two pluralities of electrodes.

An outer movable sheath 172 when slid in the distal direction to the point shown in FIG. 12 will cause the electrode leads to contract to the position shown. When slid in the proximal direction a sufficient distance, the sheath 172 acts as a deployment device in that it will move past the bend (not shown) in each of the electrode leads of the second plurality 122 permitting all electrode leads to expand outwardly as shown in FIG. 11.

The electrode leads are formed of stainless steel in this embodiment and with the thin insulation layer and the outward bend, have enough strength to automatically move outwardly through blood flow (in a venous application) and into apposition with the inner wall of the target tissue. As the inner wall shrinks due to the application of heat by the electrodes, the inner wall will force the electrode leads toward their contracted position but the electrodes will automatically stay in apposition with the inner wall during the entire ligation process due to their outward bends and the material of which they are formed.

In one embodiment shown in FIG. 12, the electrode 124 includes a temperature sensor 54 and an electrode of the second plurality also includes a temperature sensor 54. Although not shown as such, they are mounted flush with the outer electrode surfaces and their wires protrude inwardly through the electrode and are held in place along the respective leads 152 and 154. In one embodiment, the microprocessor 52 (FIG. 4) receives the signals from both temperature sensors, averages those signals and determines the effective temperature at the treatment site based on that average signal. Methods of averaging temperature signals are well known to those skilled in the art and no further description is provided here.



US 7,396,355 B2

17

Although described above as positively charged, negatively charged, or as a positive conductor or negative conductor, these terms are used for purposes of illustration only. These terms are generally meant to refer to different electrode potentials and are not meant to indicate that any particular voltage is positive or negative. Furthermore, other types of energy such as light energy from fiber optics can be used to create a thermal effect in the hollow anatomical structure undergoing treatment. Additionally, although the electrodes and leads have been described as protruding from a distal orifice in the catheter, they may be expanded by other means and in other configurations. In another embodiments, the leads may be deployed by an inner pull wire, hydraulics, or magnetic fields.

The benefits of tumescence would include locally anesthetizing the treatment area for a prolonged period of time and insulating most of the surrounding tissue and nerves from the damage of heat conducting from the treated vein. An additional benefit of the vasoconstriction induced by the Epinephrine would be that the constricted blood vessels would limit how fast the body absorbed the Lidocaine thus keeping the level of Lidocaine absorbed below the toxicity level. Also, as mentioned supra, extended applications of energy have a greater possibility of increasing the temperature of the blood to an unacceptable level and may result in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable. Using a tumescent anesthesia compression technique, including the administration of vasoconstrictive drugs, would aid in preventing this problem by exsanguinating the vein.

Although described above in terms of a vein, the concepts are generally applicable to other hollow anatomical structures in the body as well. The above description has been generally confined to veins in consideration of avoiding unnecessary repetition.

While several particular forms of the invention have been illustrated and described, it will be apparent that various modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Accordingly, it is not intended that the invention be limited, except as by the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure comprising the steps of:

introducing an elongate member into the hollow anatomical structure;

advancing the elongate member within the hollow anatomical structure;

positioning a distal end of the elongate member at or near a treatment site within the hollow anatomical structure;

administering fluid around the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site to cause the wall of the hollow anatomical structure to move towards the distal end of the elongate member; and

applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site from the distal end of the elongate member.

2. The method of claim 1, further comprising the step of moving the distal end of the elongate member along the hollow anatomical structure during the step of applying energy.

3. The method of claim 1 further comprising the steps of: ceasing the step of applying energy;

18

moving the distal end of the elongate member to a new treatment site along the hollow anatomical structure; applying energy to the hollow anatomical structure at the new treatment site from the distal end of the elongate member.

4. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy.

5. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying microwave energy.

7. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

8. The method of claim 1 wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying thermal energy.

9. The method of claim 1 wherein the fluid thermally insulates the tissue near the treatment site.

10. The method of claim 1 wherein the fluid thermally insulates nerve tissue near the treatment site.

11. The method of claim 1 wherein the fluid limits thermal damage to the tissue near the treatment site during the step of applying energy.

12. The method of claim 1 wherein a sufficient volume of fluid is administered to cause the tissue surrounding the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site to become tumescent.

13. The method of claim 1 further comprising the step of extending electrodes from the distal end of the elongate member at the treatment site before the step of applying energy.

14. The method of claim 1, wherein the hollow anatomical structure comprises a vein in a lower limb.

15. The method of claim 1, wherein the elongate member comprises a catheter.

16. The method of claim 15, wherein applying energy comprises applying RF energy.

17. The method of claim 16, wherein the hollow anatomical structure comprises a vein in a lower limb.

18. The method of claim 8, further comprising generating the thermal energy with a resistive coil.

19. The method of claim 18, wherein the hollow anatomical structure comprises a vein in a lower limb.

20. The method of claim 18, wherein the elongate member comprises a catheter.

21. The method of claim 1, wherein the elongate member comprises a fiber optic.

22. The method of claim 21, wherein applying energy comprises applying light energy.

23. The method of claim 22, wherein the hollow anatomical structure comprises a vein in a lower limb.

24. The method of claim 1, wherein administering fluid at the treatment site comprises administering tumescent fluid solution into tissue around the hollow anatomical structure and thereby compressing the hollow anatomical structure sufficiently to exsanguinate blood from the hollow portion of the hollow anatomical structure at the treatment site.

25. The method of claim 1, wherein administering fluid at the treatment site comprises administering fluid into the tissue surrounding the hollow anatomical structure to cause swelling and compress the hollow anatomical structure to a reduced size around the elongate member.

\* \* \* \* \*

# EXHIBIT 5



US007406970B2

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Zikorus et al.**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,406,970 B2**  
(45) **Date of Patent:** **\*Aug. 5, 2008**

(54) **METHOD OF USING EXPANDABLE VEIN LIGATOR CATHETER HAVING MULTIPLE ELECTRODE LEADS**

(75) **Inventors:** Arthur W. Zikorus, San Jose, CA (US); Mark P. Parker, San Jose, CA (US); Christopher S. Jones, Sunnyvale, CA (US); Douglas M. Petty, Pleasanton, CA (US); Brian E. Farley, Los Altos, CA (US); Joseph M. Tartaglia, Morgan Hill, CA (US)

(73) **Assignee:** VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc., San Jose, CA (US)

(\*) **Notice:** Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) **Appl. No.:** 10/900,563

(22) **Filed:** Jul. 28, 2004

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2004/0267258 A1 Dec. 30, 2004

**Related U.S. Application Data**

(60) Continuation of application No. 09/866,517, filed on May 25, 2001, now Pat. No. 6,769,433, which is a continuation of application No. 09/267,756, filed on Mar. 10, 1999, now Pat. No. 6,237,606, which is a division of application No. 08/927,251, filed on Sep. 11, 1997, now Pat. No. 6,200,312.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A61F 5/56 (2006.01)

A61B 18/18 (2006.01)

A61B 18/20 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** ..... 128/898; 606/41; 606/49

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... 606/27-32, 606/41, 42, 45-52, 34; 607/100-102, 46, 607/98, 104-106; 128/898

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

**U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

373,399 A 11/1887 Hamilton

(Continued)

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

EP 0 189 329 A2 7/1986

(Continued)

**OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

*Electrofulguration of Varicose Veins*, The Medical Letter On Drugs and Therapeutics, Jul. 12, 1968, at 53-55.

(Continued)

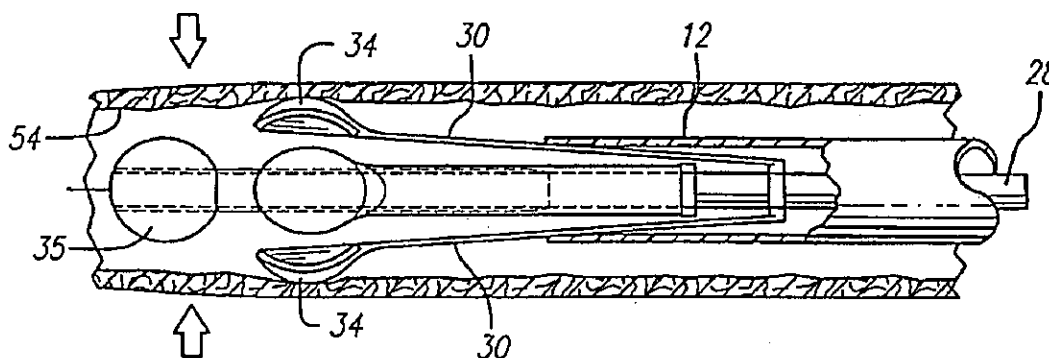
*Primary Examiner*—Roy D Gibson

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Knobbe, Martens, Olson & Bear, LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A catheter includes a plurality of primary leads to deliver energy for ligating a hollow anatomical structure. Each of the primary leads includes an electrode located at the working end of the catheter. Separation is maintained between the primary leads such that each primary lead can individually receive power of selected polarity. The primary leads are constructed to expand outwardly to place the electrodes into apposition with an anatomical structure. High frequency energy can be applied from the leads to create a heating effect in the surrounding tissue of the anatomical structure. The diameter of the hollow anatomical structure is reduced by the heating effect, and the electrodes of the primary leads are moved closer to one another. Where the hollow anatomical structure is a vein, energy is applied until the diameter of the vein is reduced to the point where the vein is occluded. In one embodiment, a secondary lead is surrounded by the primary leads, and extends beyond the primary leads. The secondary lead includes an electrode at the working end of the catheter. The secondary lead can have a polarity opposite to the polarity of the primary leads in a bipolar configuration. The polarity of the leads can be switched and the catheter can be moved during treatment to ligate an extended length of the vein. The catheter can include a lumen to accommodate a guide wire or to allow fluid delivery.

20 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets



## US 7,406,970 B2

Page 2

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

659,409 A 10/1900 Mosher  
 833,759 A 10/1906 Sourwine  
 985,865 A 3/1911 Turner, Jr.  
 3,301,258 A 1/1967 Werner et al.  
 3,557,794 A 1/1971 Van Patten  
 3,920,021 A 11/1975 Hilltebrandt  
 4,016,886 A 4/1977 Doss et al.  
 4,043,338 A 8/1977 Homm  
 4,119,102 A 10/1978 LeVeen  
 4,154,246 A 5/1979 LeVeen  
 4,312,364 A 1/1982 Convert  
 4,436,715 A 3/1984 Schaap et al.  
 4,522,205 A 6/1985 Taylor et al.  
 4,564,011 A 1/1986 Goldman  
 4,643,186 A 2/1987 Rosen et al.  
 4,660,571 A 4/1987 Hess et al.  
 4,664,120 A 5/1987 Hess  
 4,699,147 A 10/1987 Chilson et al.  
 4,709,698 A 12/1987 Johnston et al.  
 4,765,331 A 8/1988 Petrucci et al.  
 4,776,349 A 10/1988 Nashef et al.  
 4,807,620 A 2/1989 Strul et al.  
 4,823,812 A 4/1989 Eshel et al.  
 4,945,912 A 8/1990 Langberg  
 4,966,597 A 10/1990 Cosman  
 4,967,711 A 11/1990 Morikawa  
 5,010,894 A 4/1991 Edhag  
 5,022,399 A 6/1991 Biegeleisen  
 5,057,107 A 10/1991 Parins et al.  
 5,078,717 A 1/1992 Parins et al.  
 5,117,828 A 6/1992 Metzger et al.  
 5,122,137 A 6/1992 Lennox  
 5,127,902 A 7/1992 Fischell  
 5,155,602 A 10/1992 Terajima  
 5,156,151 A 10/1992 Imran  
 5,188,602 A 2/1993 Nichols  
 5,193,549 A \* 3/1993 Bellin et al. .... 600/499  
 5,215,103 A 6/1993 Desai  
 5,255,678 A 10/1993 Deslauriers et al.  
 5,263,493 A 11/1993 Avitall  
 5,275,610 A 1/1994 Eberbach  
 5,282,845 A 2/1994 Bush  
 5,293,869 A 3/1994 Edwards et al.  
 5,383,917 A 1/1995 Desai et al.  
 5,397,339 A 3/1995 Desai  
 5,405,322 A 4/1995 Lennox  
 5,409,000 A 4/1995 Imran  
 5,411,025 A 5/1995 Webster, Jr.  
 5,423,815 A 6/1995 Fugo  
 5,437,664 A 8/1995 Cohen et al.  
 5,449,381 A 9/1995 Imran  
 5,458,596 A 10/1995 Lax et al.  
 5,465,717 A 11/1995 Imran et al.  
 5,472,441 A 12/1995 Edwards et al.  
 5,505,730 A 1/1996 Siefert  
 5,514,130 A 5/1996 Baker  
 5,531,739 A 7/1996 Trelles  
 5,545,161 A 8/1996 Imran  
 5,556,396 A 9/1996 Cohen et al.  
 5,695,495 A 12/1997 Ellman et al.  
 5,709,224 A \* 1/1998 Behl et al. .... 128/898  
 5,810,804 A 9/1998 Gough et al.  
 5,817,092 A 10/1998 Behl et al.  
 5,827,268 A \* 10/1998 Laufer ..... 606/28  
 5,863,290 A 1/1999 Gough et al.  
 5,868,740 A 2/1999 LeVeen et al.  
 6,033,397 A 3/2000 Laufer et al.  
 6,033,398 A 3/2000 Farley et al.  
 6,036,687 A 3/2000 Laufer  
 6,139,527 A 10/2000 Laufer et al.

6,152,899 A 11/2000 Farley et al.  
 6,210,402 B1 4/2001 Olsen et al.  
 6,228,082 B1 5/2001 Baker et al.  
 6,401,719 B1 6/2002 Farley et al.  
 6,689,126 B1 2/2004 Farley et al.  
 6,769,433 B2 \* 8/2004 Zikorus et al. .... 128/898

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP 0 629 382 A1 12/1994  
 EP 727 184 A1 8/1996  
 EP 0 738 501 A1 10/1996  
 WO WO/9212681 8/1992  
 WO WO/93/21846 11/1993  
 WO WO/9407446 4/1994  
 WO WO/9421170 9/1994  
 WO WO/9510236 4/1995  
 WO WO/9510322 4/1995  
 WO WO/9531142 11/1995  
 WO WO/9632885 10/1996  
 WO WO/9706739 2/1997  
 WO WO/9717892 5/1997  
 WO WO/9818393 5/1998  
 WO WO/9819613 5/1998  
 WO WO/9855072 12/1998

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Watts, *Endovenous Diathermy Destruction Of Internal Saphenous*, British Medical Journal, Oct. 7, 1972.  
 O'Reilly, *Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis as Unit of the Annameterium for the Attack on Varicose Veins*, The Medical Journal of Australia, Jun. 1, 1974 at 900.  
 O'Reilly, *Endovenous Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins*, The Australian New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 47, No. 3, Jun. 1997, pp. 393-395.  
 Brunelle, et al., *A Bipolar Electrode for Vascular Electrocoagulation with Alternating Current*, Technical Notes, Oct. 1980 at 239-40.  
 O'Reilly, *A Technical of Diathermy Sclerosis of Varicose Veins*, The Australian New Zealand Journal of Surgery, vol. 51, No. 4, Aug. 1981, pp. 379-382.  
 Cragg, et al. *Endovenous Diathermic Vessel Occlusion*, Diagnostic Radiology, 144:303-308 Jul. 1982.  
 Ogawa, et al., *Electrothrombosis as a Treatment of Cirroid Angioma in the Face and Scalp and Varicosis of the Leg*, Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, Sep. 1982, vol. 3, at 310-318.  
 Biegelesian, K.; *Use Of The Venoscope For The Treatment Of Varicose Veins*, Phelobogie 1989, pp. 419-422.  
 Gradman, *Venoscopic Obliteration of Variceal Tributaries Using Monopolar Electrocautery*, Journal of Dermatology Surgery Oncology, 1994, 20, p. 482-485.  
 Inturri, *Pathophysiology of Portal Hypertension*, Journal of Vascular Technology 19 (5-6):271-276, Sep.-Dec. 1995.  
 Money, *Endovascular Electroablation of Peripheral Veins*, 22<sup>nd</sup> Annual Symposium, Current Critical Problems, New Horizons and Techniques in Vascular and Endovascular Surgery (Nov. 1995).  
 Crockett, et al. *Preliminary Experience with an Endovascular Catheter for Electrocoagulation of Peripheral Veins*, Journal of Vascular Technology, Winter 1996, at 19-22.  
 VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff's Disclosure of Asserted Claims and Preliminary Infringement Contentions, dated Jan. 23, 2006, and Exhibits A-C thereto.  
 VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Preliminary Invalidity Contentions Pur-

US 7,406,970 B2

Page 3

suant to Patent Local Rule 3-3, dated Mar. 9, 2006, and Exhibits A-D thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Supplemental Submission by Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc. Regarding Their Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, dated Apr. 11, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Vascular Solutions, Inc.'s Disclosure of Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, dated Mar. 9, 2006, and Exhibits A-D thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Angiodynamics, Inc.'s Disclosure of Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, dated Mar. 9, 2006, and Exhibits A-E thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff's Disclosure of Asserted Claims and Final Infringement Contentions, dated Dec. 20, 2006, and Exhibits A-C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Final Invalidity Contentions Pursuant to Patent Local Rule 3-6, dated Jan. 9, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Angiodynamics, Inc.'s Disclosure of Final Invalidity Contentions, dated Jan. 9, 2007, and Exhibit C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Vascular Solutions, Inc.'s Final Invalidity Contentions, dated Jan. 9, 2007, and Exhibit C thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): VNUS Medical Technologies' Opening Claim Construction Brief dated Aug. 22, 2006, Appendix 1 and 2 thereto and Proposed Claim Construction Order.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Claim Construction Brief dated Sep. 19, 2006, and accompanying Proposed Claim Construction Order, Declaration of Mark N. Isaacs, M.D. in Support of Defendants' Claim Construction Brief, and Declaration of Ted R. Kohler, M.D. in Support of Defendants' Claim Construction Brief.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Individual Claim Construction Brief of Diomed Holdings Inc. and Diomed, Inc. dated Sep. 19, 2006, and accompanying Proposed Claim Construction Order.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Angiodynamics, Inc.'s Claim Construction Brief dated Sep. 19, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Vascular Solutions, Inc.'s Claim Construction Brief dated Sep. 19, 2006, Appendix 1 thereto and accompanying Proposed Claim Construction Order.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): VNUS Medical Technologies, Inc.'s Reply Claim Construction Brief, dated Oct. 11, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Amended Order Construing Claims, dated Nov. 22, 2006.

Muranov, A.N., "Electrocoagulation Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," Medical Lit. State Pub., vol. 88, May 5, 1962.

Milostanov, V.N., "Electrocoagulation as the Method of Choice for Surgical Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," State Medical Publishers of the Ukrainian SSR, Mar. 1962.

Milostanov, V.N., "Endovascular Electrocoagulation: The Operation of Choice in Treating Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," Saratov, Sep. 12-15, 1966.

Lamper, S.R., "Pathologic-Morphological Changes in the Veins after Endovascular Electrocoagulation," Stavropol, 1967.

Hejhal, et al., "Endovascular Electrocoagulation of Superficial Varices of the Lower Limbs," *Rozhledi v Chirurgi* 38, Jun. 1959, pp. 418-425.

Lamper, "Electrocoagulation Method to Treat Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremity," *Khirurgia* (Mosk.) 40, Nov. 1964, pp. 111-116.

Muranov, A.N., "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities by the Method of Electrocoagulation," pp. 72-74. Politowski, et al., "Complications and Difficulties In Electrocoagulation of Varices of the Lower Extremities," *Surgery*, Jun. 1966, vol. 59, No. 6, pp. 932-934.

Becker, et al., "Long-Term Occlusion of the Porcine Cystic Duct by Means of Endoluminal Radio-Frequency Electrocoagulation," *Radiology*, Apr. 1988, pp. 63-68.

Frantsev, et al., "Treatment of Varicose Disease," *Sov Med* 1991, 1:22-25.

Ershov, "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs," 1968, USSR Academy of Medical Science, pp. 1-15.

Frantsev, et al., "New Electrodes for Electrosurgical Treatment of Subcutaneous Varicose Veins," *May* 1973, 110(5), pp. 115-117.

Sokolnicki, et al., "Attempts to Coagulate Varices of the Lower Limbs with High-Frequency Current," *Polish Medical Weekly*, Jul. 1966, No. 27, pp. 1024-1026.

Frantsev, "Use of Puncture Monoactive Electrodes in the Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs," 1970 Nov. 105(11):77-80.

Gardner, et al., "Treatment of Arteriovenous Malformation by Endarterial Electrocoagulation," *Brit. J. Surg.*, Feb. 1972, vol. 59, No. 2, pp. 146-148.

Thompson, et al., "Transcatheter Electrocoagulation: A Therapeutic Angiographic Technique for Vessel Occlusion," *Investigative Radiology*, Mar.-Apr. 1977, vol. 12, No. 2, pp. 146-153.

Thompson, et al., "Transcatheter Electrocoagulation: Experimental Evaluation of the Anode," *Investigative Radiology*, Jan.-Feb. 1979, vol. 14, pp. 41-47.

Thompson, et al., "Vessel Occlusion with Transcatheter Electrocoagulation: Initial Clinical Experience," *Diagnostic Radiology*, Nov. 1979, vol. 133, pp. 335-340.

Ziada, "Electro-Diathermy of the Long Saphenous Vein in Situ as an Alternative to Stripping," *J. Egypt Med. Assoc.*, 1977, vol. 60, pp. 821-822.

Becker, et al., "Catheter for Endoluminal Bipolar Electrocoagulation," *Radiology*, Feb. 1989, vol. 170, No. 2, pp. 561-562.

Musaev, S.M., "Intravascular Electrocoagulation of Dilated Subcutaneous Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremities," *Eksp Khir Anesteziol.* Jul.-Aug. 1963; 27:36-7.

Phillips, et al., "Videoscopic Subfascial Incompetent Perforator Vein Ablation," *British Journal of Surgery*, 1996, 83, p. 1552.

Ralston, et al., "Effect of Increasing Current and Decreasing Blood Flow for Transcatheter Electrocoagulation," *Investigative Radiology*, Mar.-Apr. 1982, vol. 17, pp. 171-177.



US 7,406,970 B2

Page 4

- Ward, "The Treatment of Orbital Varicosities," Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg, Mar. 1997, vol. 113, pp. 286-288.
- Politowski, "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs with the Aid of Electrocoagulation," Pol Przegl Chir. 1964 Jan. 36:7-14.
- Goldman, et al., "Diagnosis and Treatment of Varicose Veins: A Review," Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology, Sep. 1994, vol. 31, No. 3, pp. 393-413.
- Ruju, et al., "Stripping of the Internal Saphenous Vein by "Tumescent Technique" and Under Local Anesthesia," G Ital. Chir. Vasc. 1998: pp. 43-46.
- Nabatoff, "A Complete Stripping of Varicose Veins Under Local Anesthesia," N.Y. State J. M., Jun. 1953, pp. 1445-1448.
- Ricci, et al., "Office Varicose Vein Surgery Under Local Anesthesia," J. Dermatol. Surg. Oncol., 1992, vol. 18, pp. 55-58.
- Cohn, et al., "Ambulatory Phlebectomy Using the Tumescent Technique for Local Anesthesia," Dermatol. Surg. 1995, 21:315-318.
- Ricci, et al., "Sections I: Ricci-Georgiev Method," from "Ambulatory Phlebectomy: A Practical Guide for Treating Varicose Veins," Chap. 7, Sec. I, pp. 71-74, Mosby Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO 1995.
- Goldman, "Section II: Goldman Method Preparation and Dosage," from "Ambulatory Phlebectomy: A Practical Guide for Treating Varicose Veins," Chap. 7, Sec. II, pp. 74-76, Mosby Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO 1995.
- Smith, et al., "Tumescent Anesthesia in Ambulatory Phlebectomy," Dermatol. Surg., Apr. 1998, vol. 24:453-456.
- Lamper, "Electrocoagulation in the Treatment of Varicose Subcutaneous Veins of the Lower Extremities," Khirurgiya, Nov. 1964, No. 11, pp. 93-96.
- Proehstle, et al., "High Ligation and Stripping of the Long Saphenous Vein Using the Tumescent Technique for Local Anesthesia," Dermatol. Surg. 1998, vol. 24, pp. 149-153.
- Stallworth, et al., "A Simplified and Efficient Method for Treating Varicose Veins," Surgery, Nov. 1979, pp. 765-768.
- Bone Salat, "Phleboesthetic and Lymphedema Conference of the Spanish Society for Aesthetic Medicine," Medical Board of Madrid, Nov. 1998.
- Bone Salat, "Fifth Hispano-Argentinean Conference on Advances in Aesthetic Medicine," Murcia, Oct. 1998.
- Bone Salat, "Master's Thesis: Balearic University of Aesthetic Medicine," Palma de Mallorca, Oct. 1998.
- Ershov, "Multimodality Treatment of Varicosity with Electrocoagulation Medical Guidelines," May 5, 1974, Moscow.
- Petrovsky, "Local Anesthesia," Big Medical Encyclopedia, 1974, 3rd Ed., vol. 1, pp. 534-536, Publishing House Soviet Encyclopedia, Moscow.
- Vishnevsky, "Collected Papers," 1952, vol. 5, pp. 30-62, Academy of Medical Science of the USSR, Moscow.
- Muranov, "Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Extremity by the Endovascular Electrocoagulation Method," 1966, vol. 5, S.M. Kirov Academy of Military Medicine, Leningrad.
- Welch, "History of Tumescent Anesthesia, Part I: From American Surgical Textbooks of the 1920s and 1930s," Sep. 1998, vol. 18, No. 5, pp. 353-357, Aesthetic Surgery Journal.
- Sigel et al., "The Mechanism of Blood Vessel Closure by High Frequency Electrocoagulation," 1965, pp. 823-831, Surgery, Gynecology & Obstetrics.
- Bone Salat, "Endoluminal Diode-Laser Treatment of Varicose Veins," Baron de Pinopar Medical Clinic, Jan. 1999, pp. 1-8.
- Sedov et al., "Reducing Complications from Electrosurgical Treatment of Varicose Veins of the Lower Limbs," Department of Surgery, Drezna City Hospital, Moscow Region. Klin. Khir. 1980 Jul. (7):63-64.
- O'Reilly et al., "Transcatheter Fiberoptic Laser Coagulation of Blood Vessels," Radiology 142: 777-780, Mar. 1982.
- Puglisi et al., "Application of the ND-YAG Laser in the Treatment of Varicose Vein Syndrome," Phlebologie "89, A. Davy, R. Stemmer eds., pp. 839-884.
- Drago, Mazza et al., "The Use of Argon Laser in the Treatment of Ideopathic Varices in the Lower Limbs," Minerva Angiologica, vol. 19, 1993.
- Sattler, "Outpatient Surgery for Varicose Veins Under Tumescent Local Anaesthesia," presented at the World Congress of Phlebology, Sydney, Australia, Sep. 1998.
- Korolenko, "Morphological Changes in Tissues After Novocain Solutions Are Injected Into Them Under Pressure," Medical Affairs, State Medical Publishing House, Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, 1958.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits I, O-Q, BB and DD thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 10, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits KK, MM and OO thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 31, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Dr. R. Rox Anderson in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 10, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Richard J. Twilley (with Exhibits C, I, L-N and R-U thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 10, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (unredacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.
- VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Eric E. Grondahl (with Exhibits A-D thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary



US 7,406,970 B2

Page 5

Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendant Diomed's Answer to First Amended Complaint, dated Oct. 31, 2005.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS's Answer to Counterclaims of Diomed Asserted in Response to First Amended Complaint, dated Nov. 23, 2005.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Amended Patent Rule 4-3b Chart, dated Oct. 23, 2006.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Response to VNUS Medical Technologies' Third Set of Interrogatories, dated Apr. 18, 2007, and Exhibits A-B thereto.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS's Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement (redacted version), refiled and dated Aug. 28, 2007, and Declaration of Howard Greisler M.D. in support thereof (redacted version).

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendant Diomed's Opposition to VNUS's Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement (redacted version), refiled and dated Sep. 12, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants Angiodynamics' and VSI's Joint Opposition to VNUS's Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement (redacted version), refiled and dated Sep. 12, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS's Reply Brief In Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Patent Infringement, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (redacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Dr. J. Kevin McGraw (with Appendices A&B thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits A, D K-N, R, T-Z, AA, CC, EE, FF and HH thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Opposition to Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (redacted version), dated Aug. 24, 2007, and Declaration of Dr. Mitchel P. Goldman (with Appendices A-D thereto) in support thereof.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 (redacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Charles T. Steenburg (with Exhibits II, LL, and NN thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Supplemental Opposition to Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC §§ 102-103 and Exhibit A thereto (redacted version), dated Oct. 10, 2007, and Declaration of Dr. Mitchel P. Goldman in support thereof.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion and Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (redacted version), dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Richard J. Twilley (with Exhibits A, D, F-H, K, O, Q, and V thereto) in support of Defendants' Joint Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 10, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Opposition to Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (redacted version), dated Aug. 24, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112 (redacted version), dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Declaration of Eric E. Grondahl (without Exhibits) in support of Defendants' Joint Reply Brief in Support of Motion for Summary Judgment of Invalidity Under 35 USC § 112, dated Aug. 31, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Order Denying Plaintiff VNUS's Motion for Summary Judgment on Patent Infringement; Denying Defendants' Motion for Summary Judgment on Enablement and Written Description; and Denying in Part and Deferring in Part Ruling on Defendants' Motion for Summary Judgment Under 35 USC §§ 102-103; dated Oct. 2, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Order Denying Deferred Portion of Defendants' Motion for Summary Judgment Under 35 USC §§ 102-103, dated Oct. 22, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Motion in Limine #1 and Brief in support thereof, dated Oct. 1, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Opposition to Defendants' Motion in Limine #1, dated Oct. 9, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Order Granting Defendants' Joint Motion in Limine #1, dated Oct. 22, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Motion in Limine and Brief in Support Thereof, to Exclude the Thesis of Dr. Bone-Salat, Evidence of Inventive Activity in Spain, and Uncorroborated Communications About Such Activity, dated Oct. 1, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Oppo-

## US 7,406,970 B2

Page 6

sition to Motion in Limine to Exclude the Thesis of Dr. Bone-Salat, Evidence of Inventive Activity in Spain, and Uncorroborated Communications About Such Activity (redacted version), dated Oct. 16, 2007, and Declaration of Dr. Carlos Bone-Salat in support thereof.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Plaintiff VNUS' Motion in Limine and Brief in Support Thereof, to Exclude Expert Trial Testimony of Drs. R. Rox Anderson, Irving J. Bigio, J. Kevin McGraw and Cynthia K. Shortell, dated Oct. 1, 2007. *VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Defendants' Joint Opposition to Motion in Limine to Exclude Expert Trial Testimony of Drs. R. Rox Anderson, Irving J. Bigio, J. Kevin McGraw and Cynthia K. Shortell, dated Oct. 16, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Robert A. Weiss, M.D. (with Exhibits A, C and D thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Howard P. Greisler, M.D., dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of R. Rox Anderson, M.D., dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Irving J. Bigio, Ph.D. (with Exhibit B thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Dr. J. Kevin McGraw (with Appendices B-D thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Eugene C. Rzucidlo, Esq. (with Appendix C thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Russell H. Samson, M.D. (with Exhibits C-F thereto), dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Cynthia K. Shortell, M.D., dated May 25, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Expert Report of Warren Grundfest, M.D. (with Appendix A thereto), dated Jun. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Robert A. Weiss, M.D. (with Exhibits A-B thereto), dated Jun. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Charles E. Van Horn, Esq. (with Exhibits D-F thereto), dated Jun. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of R. Rox Anderson, M.D., dated Jun. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Dr. J. Kevin McGraw (redacted), dated Jun. 15, 2007.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC): Rebuttal Expert Report of Russell H. Samson, M.D., dated Jun. 15, 2007.

Ershov & Safonov, "Multimodality Treatment of Varicosity With Electrocoagulation Medical Guidelines," May 5, 1974, Moscow.

Goldman et al., "High Ligation Division and Groin-to-Knee Stripping of the LSV: An Office Procedure," from "Ambulatory Phlebectomy: A Practical Guide for Treating Varicose Veins," Chap. 15, pp. 163-186, Mosby Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO 1995.

Klein, "Tumescent Technique Chronicles: Local Anesthesia, Liposuction and Beyond," *Dermatol. Surg.* 1995;21, pp. 449-457.

Smith, "Tumescent Anesthesia in Ambulatory Phlebectomy," abstract presented at the Nov. 1997 Congress of the North American Society of Phlebology, Palm Desert, California.

VNUS Medical Technologies, "Endovenous Vein Shrinkage for the Treatment of Venous Insufficiency," slides presented at the Nov. 1997 Congress of the North American Society of Phlebology, Palm Desert, California.

Sommer et al., "Tumescent Local Anesthesia: Practical Application," pp. V-XIV, 40-44, 156-184, Dec. 8, 1998.

Transcript of Deposition of Mitchel P. Goldman, M.D. of Sep. 5, 2006; pp. 18-36.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/738,488: papers since Jul. 2007: summary of interview of Aug. 2007, amendment filed Sep. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/164,928: papers since Jul. 2007: restriction requirement of Jul. 2007, amendment and response filed Oct. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/872,646: papers since Jul. 2007: amendment filed Sep. 21, 2007; amendment filed Jan. 29, 2008.

Partsch, Compression Therapy of the Legs, *J Dermatol. Surg. Oncol.* 17:799-805, 1991.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,769,433: preliminary amendment of Sep. 2001, office action of Sep. 2002, amendment of Mar. 2003, office action of Jul. 2003, amendments of Dec. 2003 and Jan. 2004, notice of allowability of Apr. 2004. Excerpt from file history of US 6,237,606: original claims, preliminary amendment of Mar. 1999, office action of Feb. 2000, amendment of Apr. 2000, office action of Jul. 2000, summary of interview of Sep. 2000, amendment of Oct. 2000, notice of allowability of Jan. 2001.

Excerpt from file history of US 10/872,646: original claims, office action of Jun. 2006, summary of interview of Oct. 2006, amendment of Nov. 2006, office action of Jun. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,752,803: preliminary amendment of Jul. 2001, office action of Sep. 2002, amendment of Mar. 2003, office action of Jun. 2003, summary of interview of Oct. 2003, amendment of Oct. 2003, office action of Nov. 2003, response of Jan. 2004, notice of allowability of Feb. 2004.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,258,084: original claims, office action of Apr. 2000, amendment of Aug. 2000, summary of interview of Dec. 2000, notice of allowability of Dec. 2000.

Excerpt from file history of U.S. Appl. No. 10/738,488: preliminary amendment of Mar. 2004, office action of Mar. 2006, response of Apr. 2006, office action of Jun. 2006, summary of interview of Oct. 2006, amendment of Oct. 2006, office action of Jun. 2007.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,682,526: original claims, preliminary amendments of Nov. 2000, Jan. 2001, May 2001, office action of Feb. 2002, response of Mar. 2002, office action of Jul. 2002, amendment of Jan. 2003, office action of

**US 7,406,970 B2**

Page 7

---

Mar. 2003, amendment of Aug. 2003, notice of allowability of Sep. 2003.

Excerpt from file history of US 10/164,928: original claims, office action of Oct. 2003, amendment of Apr. 2004, office action of Jul. 2004, terminal disclaimer of Aug. 2004.

Excerpt from file history of US 6,401,719: original claims, office action of Oct. 2000, amendment of Dec. 2000, office action of Mar. 2001, amendment of Jul. 2001, office action of

Aug. 2001, response of Nov. 2001, notice of allowability of Mar. 2002.

*VNUS Medical Technologies v. Diomed Holdings et al* (N.D. Cal., Case No. C05-02972 MMC); Diomed Holdings, Inc. and Diomed, Inc.'s Response to VNUS Medical Technologies' Third Set of Interrogatories, dated Apr. 18, 2007, and Exhibits A-B thereto.

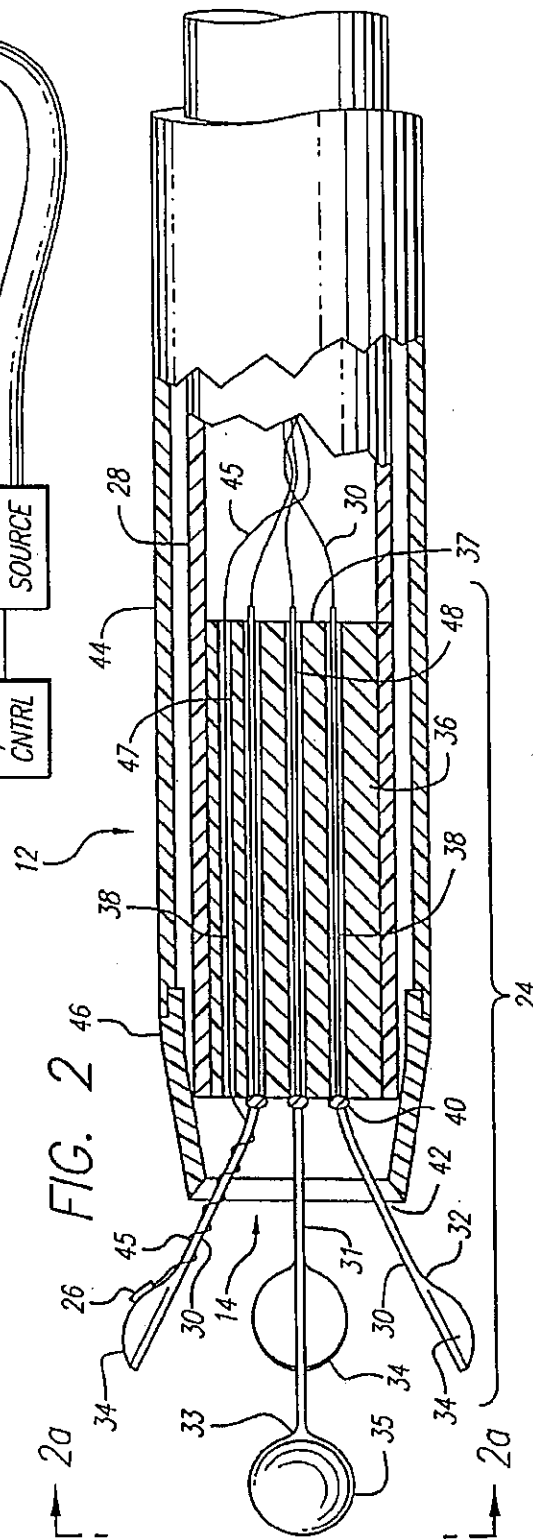
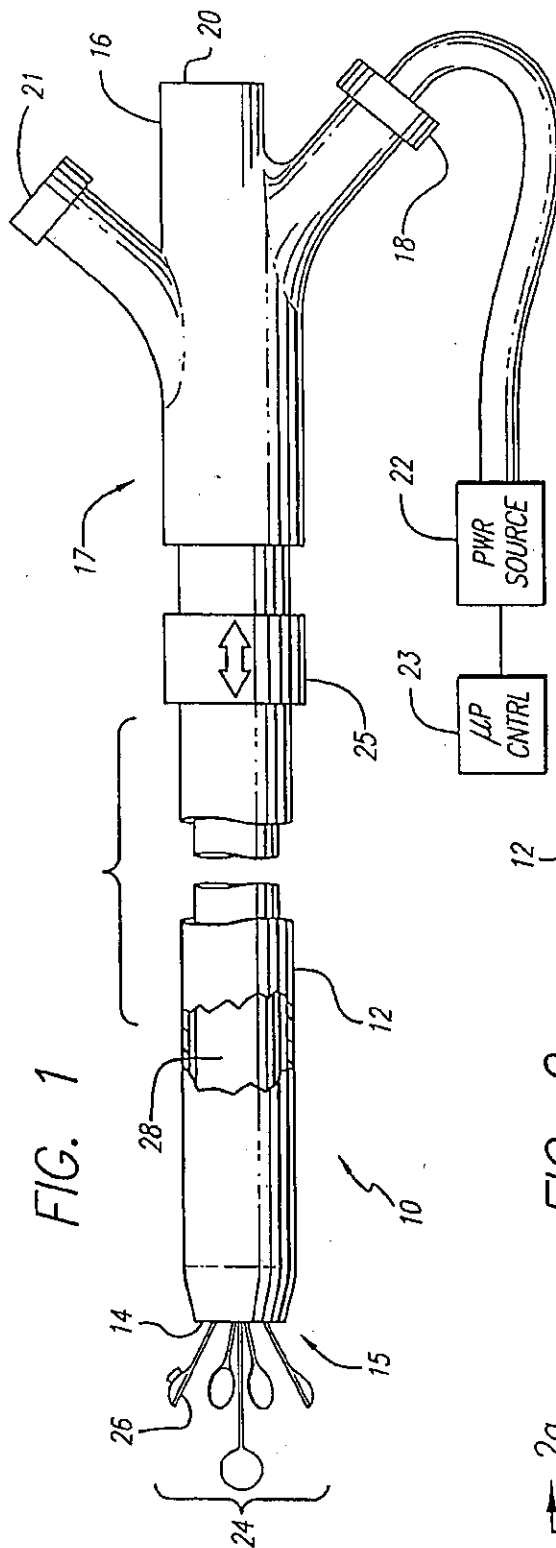
\* cited by examiner

## U.S. Patent

**Aug. 5, 2008**

Sheet 1 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2

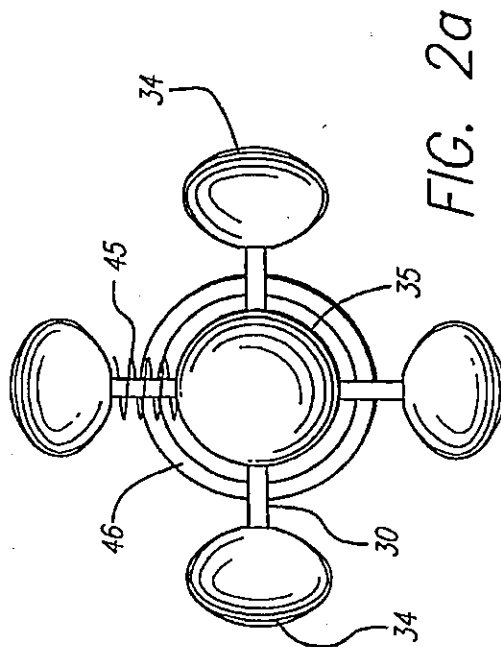
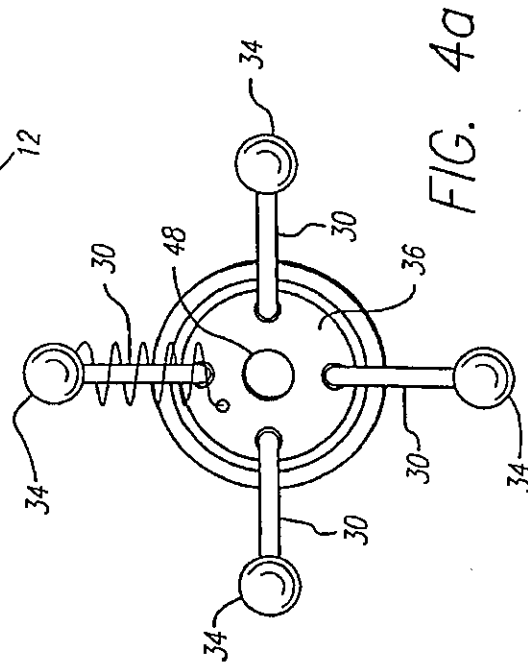
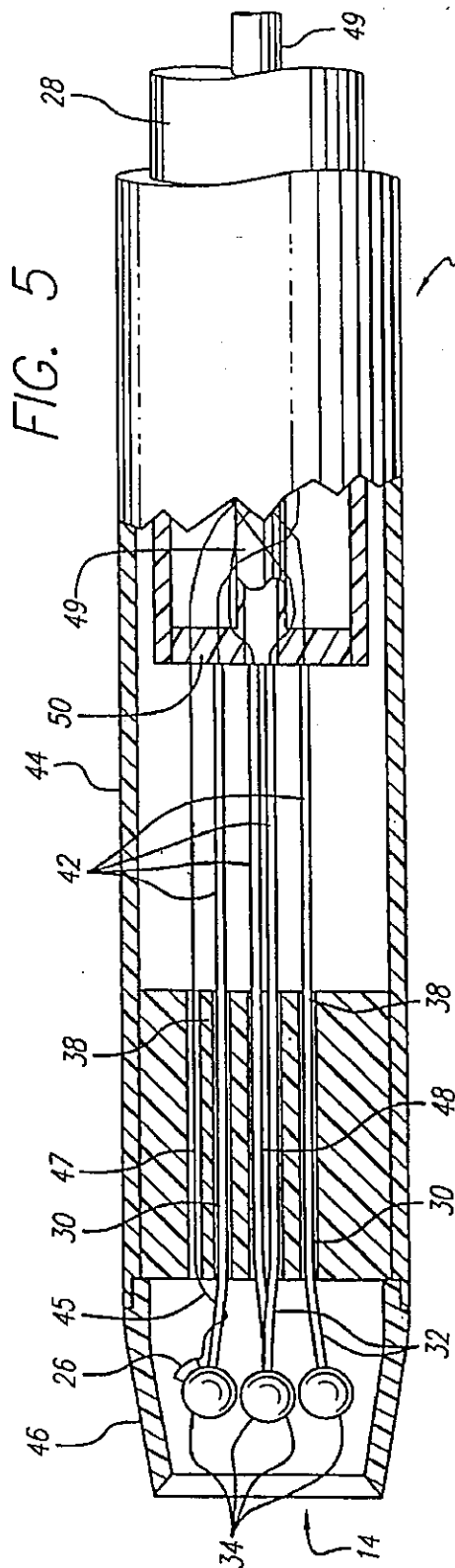


U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 2 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2

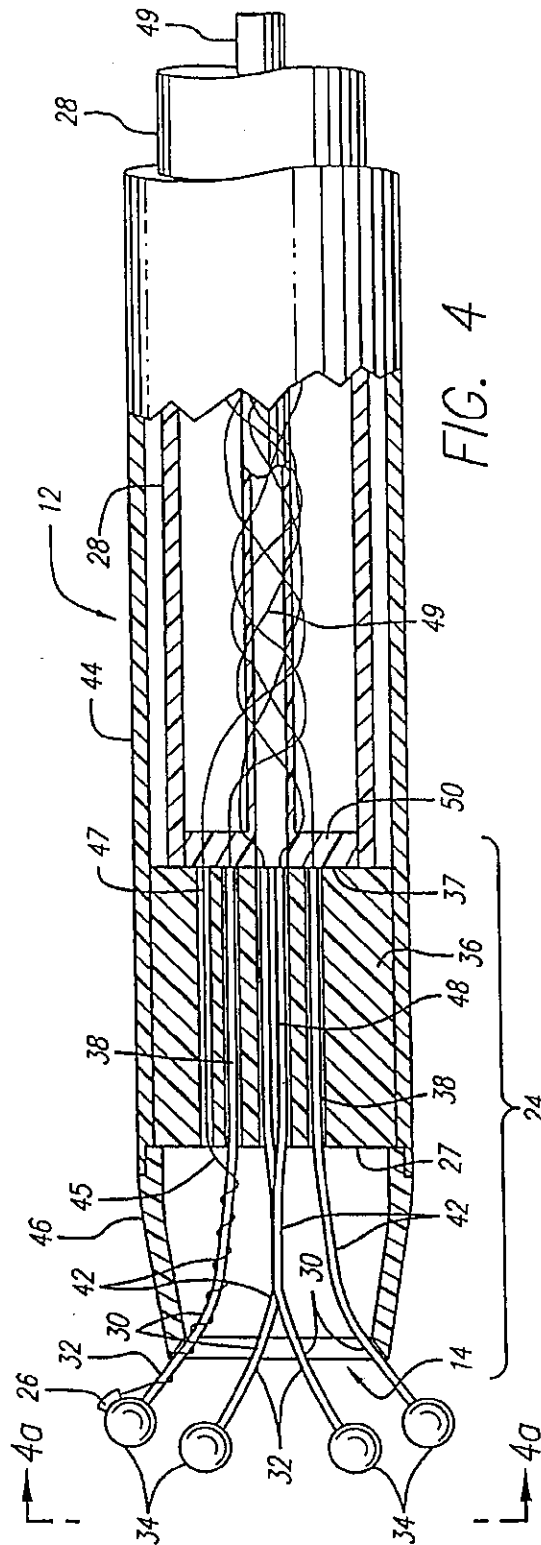
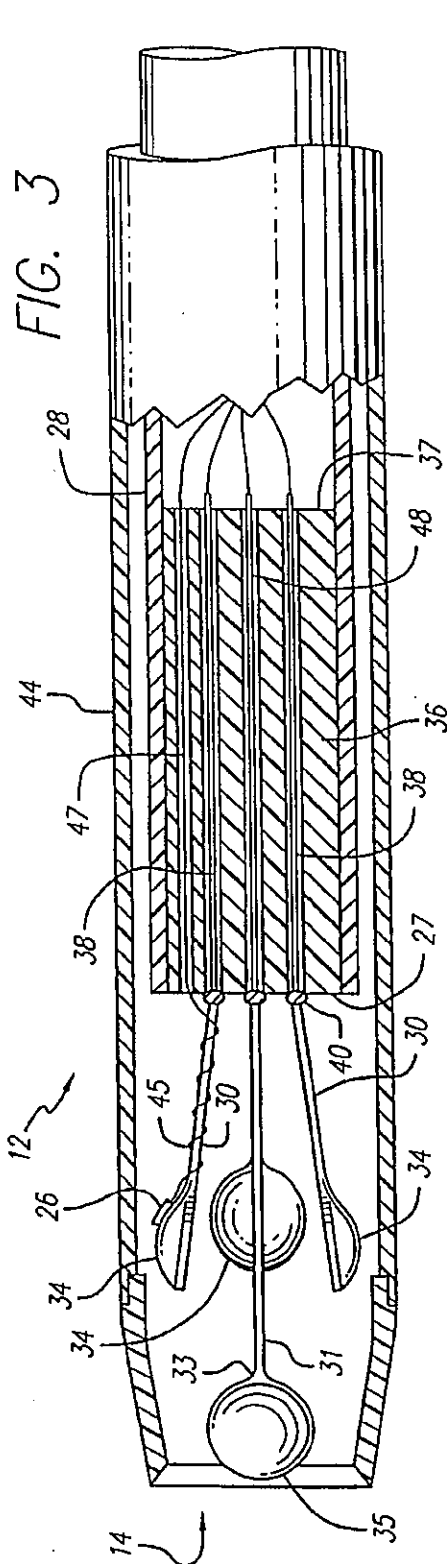


U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 3 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2



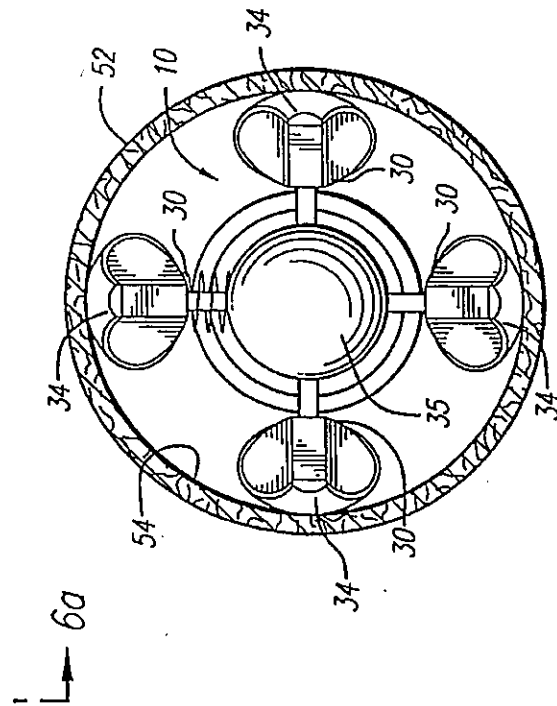
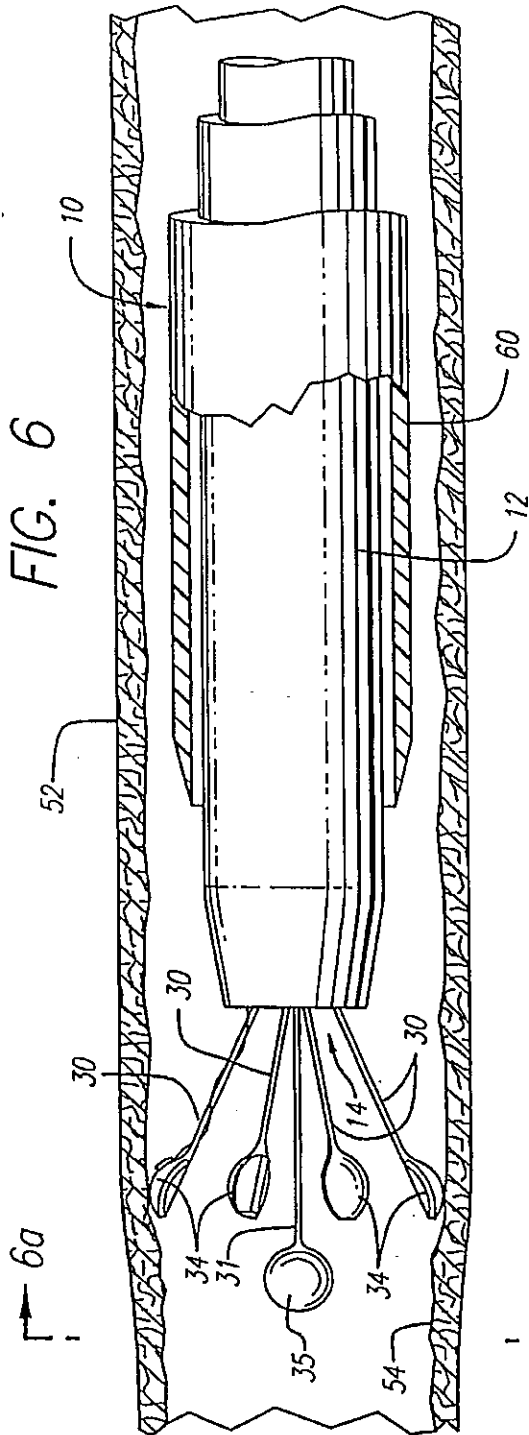


U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 4 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2



U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 5 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2

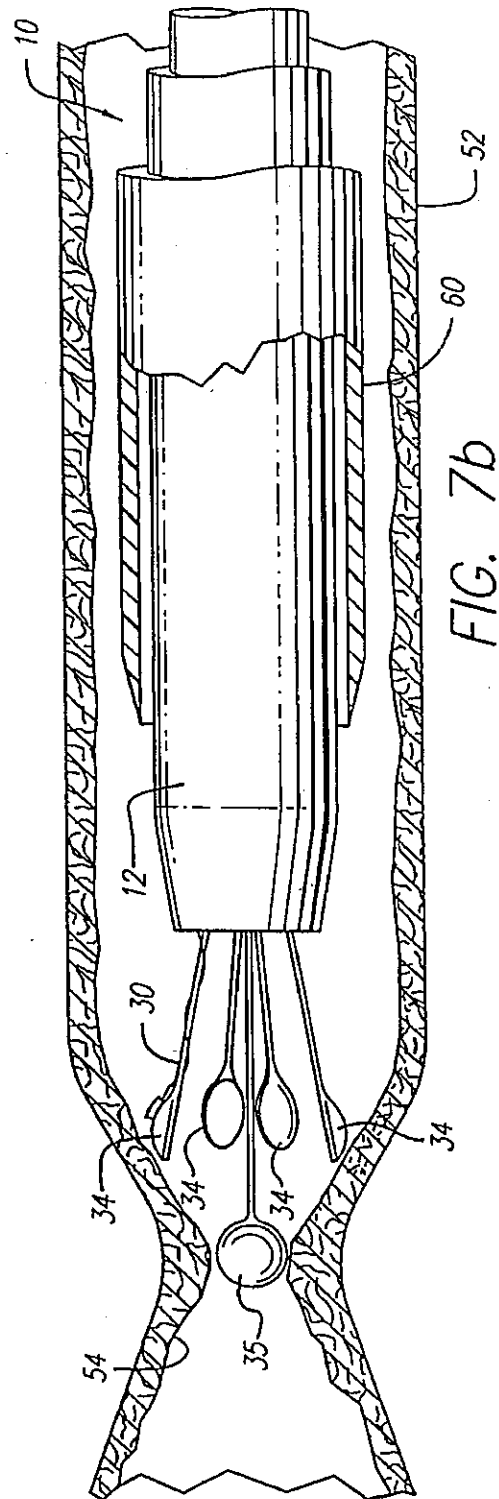
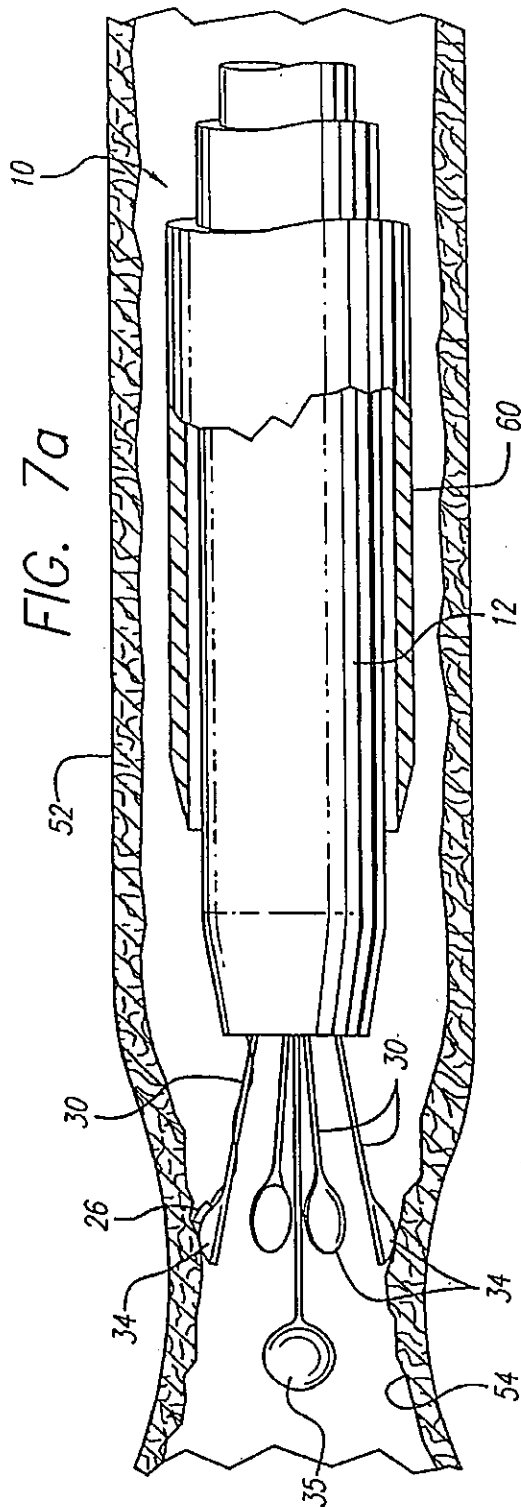
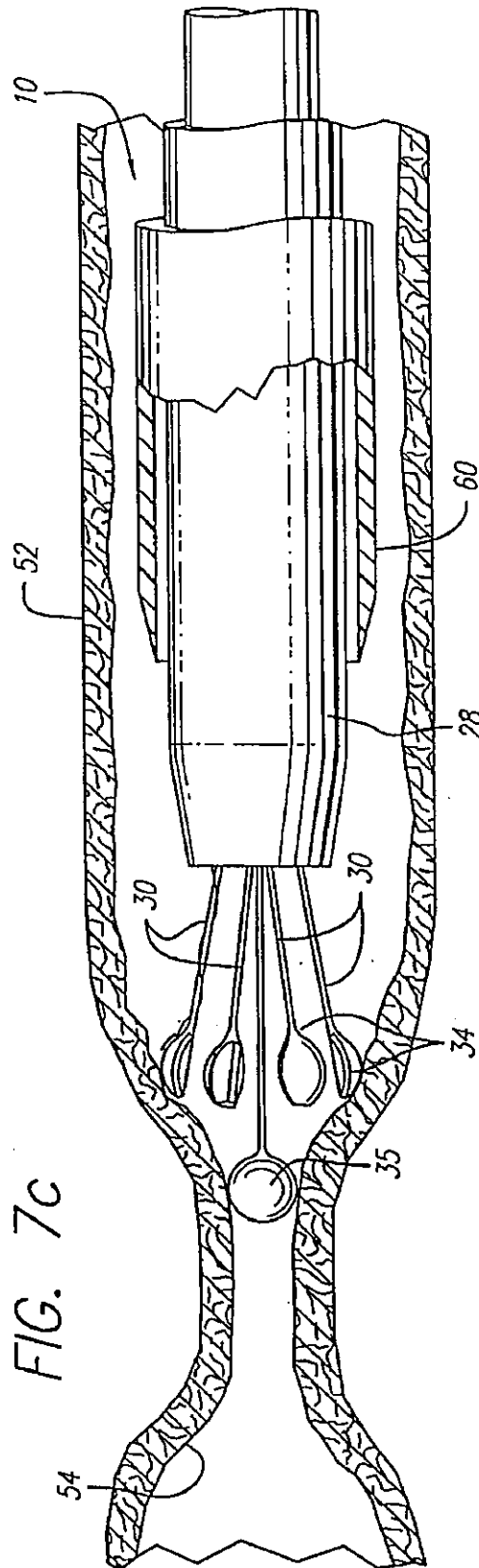


FIG. 7C

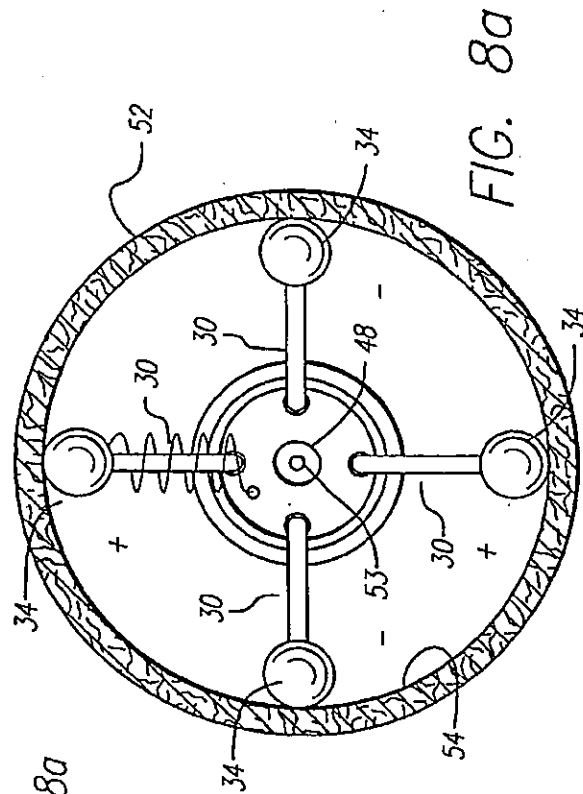
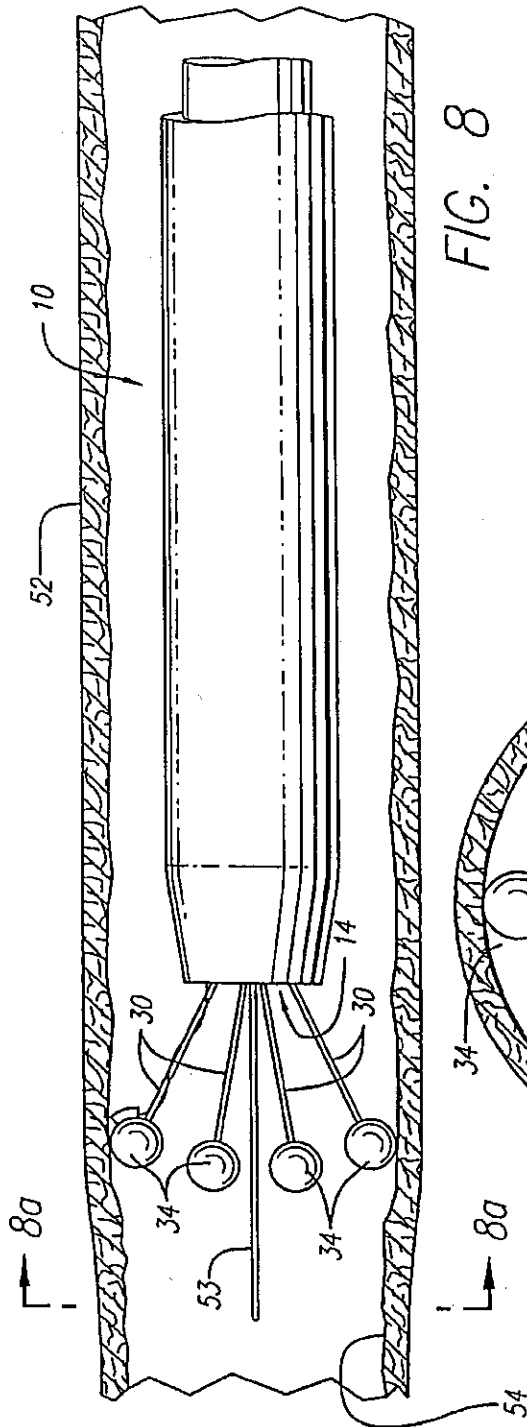


U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 7 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2

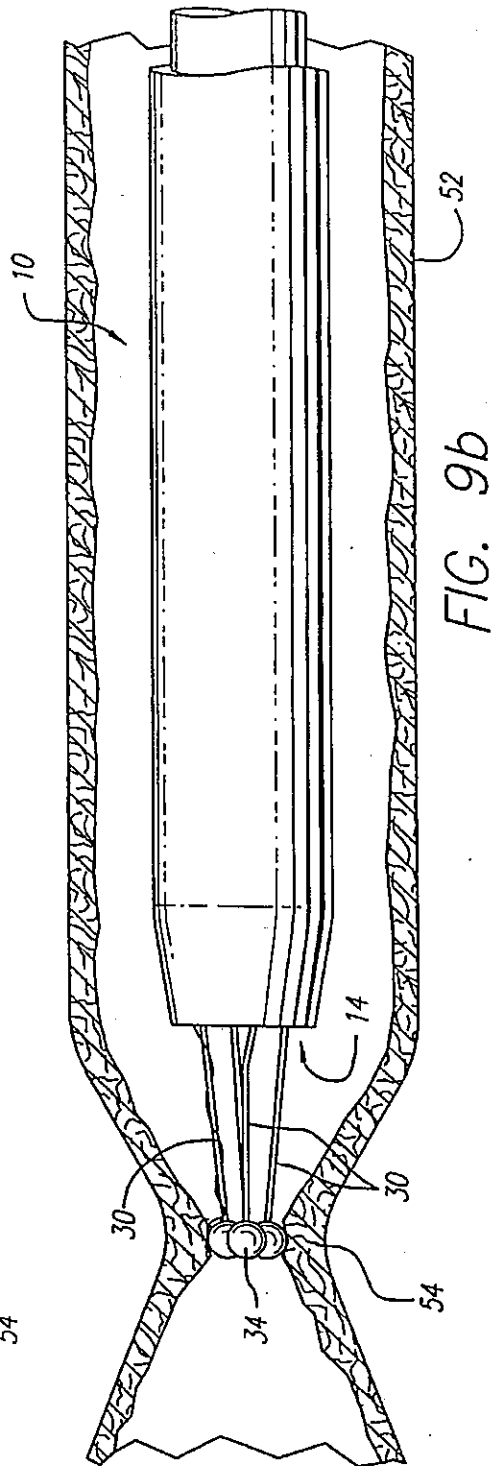
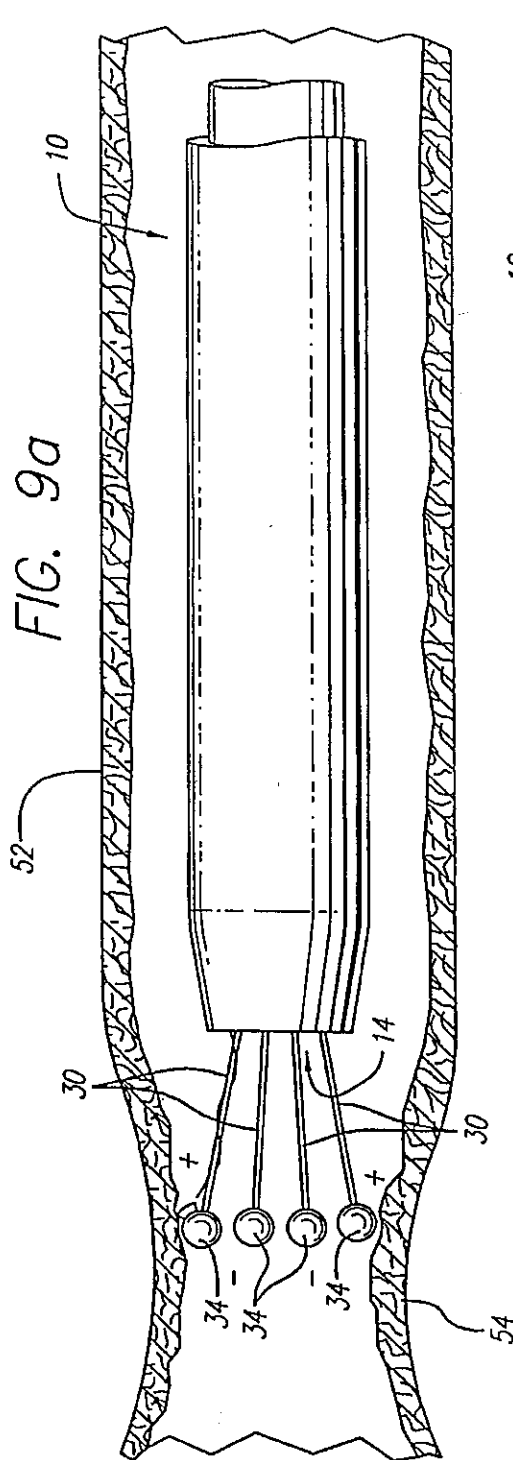


U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 8 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2

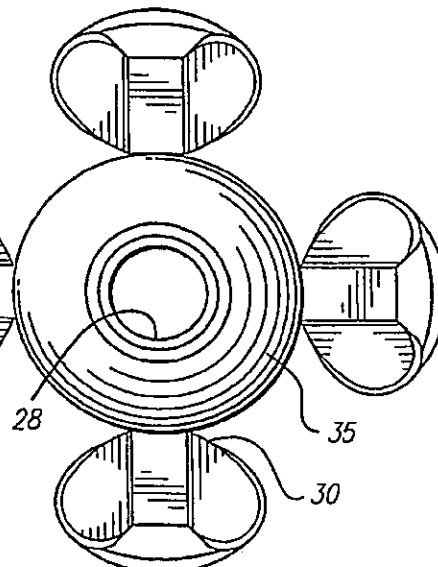
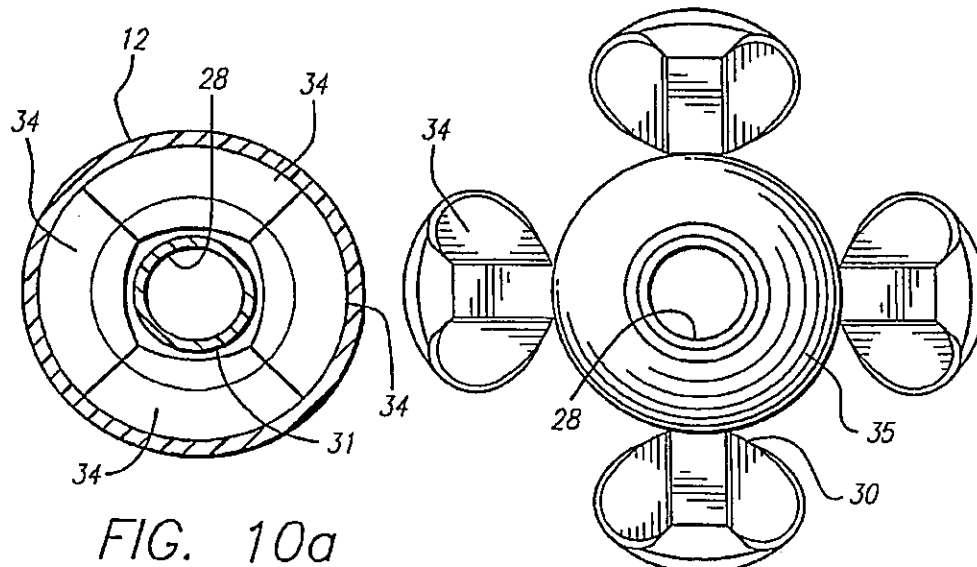
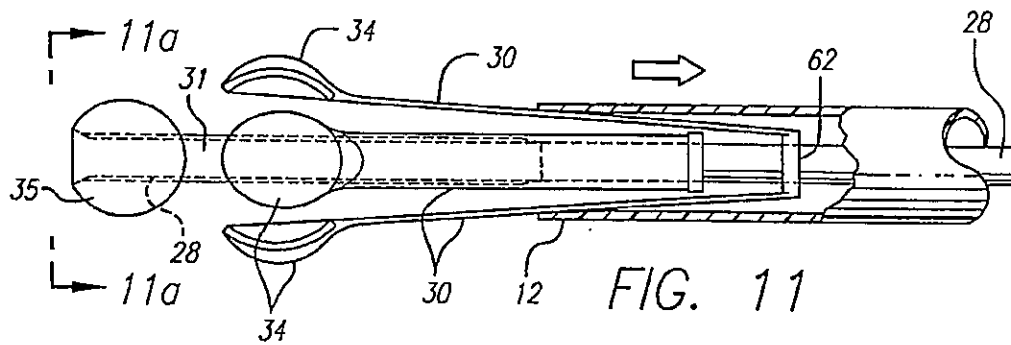
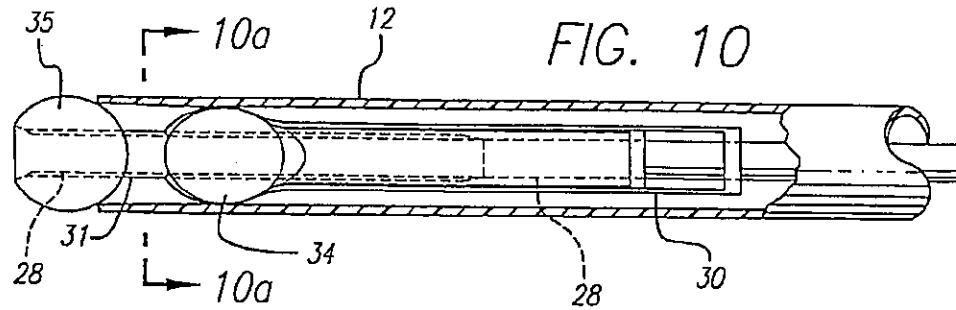


U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 9 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2





U.S. Patent

Aug. 5, 2008

Sheet 10 of 10

US 7,406,970 B2

FIG. 12

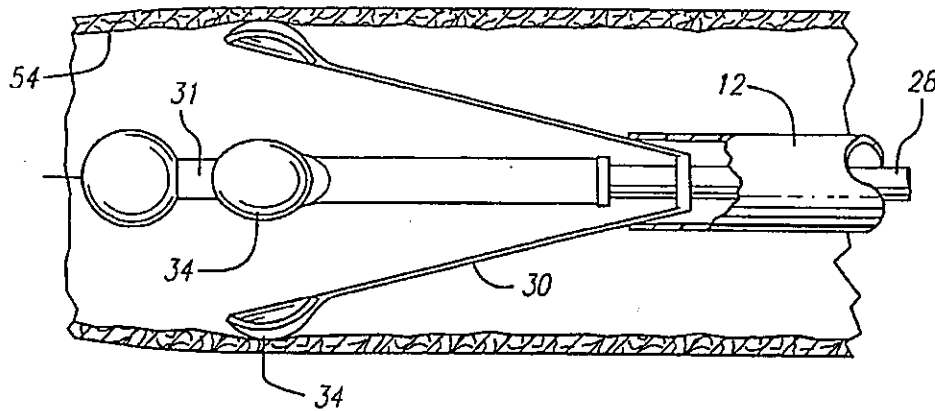


FIG. 13

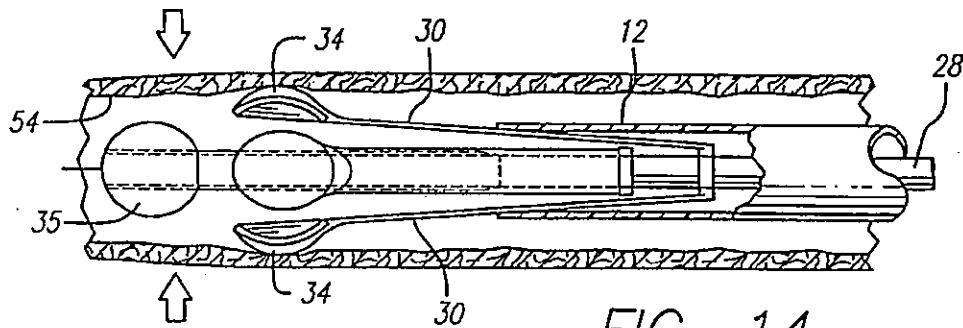
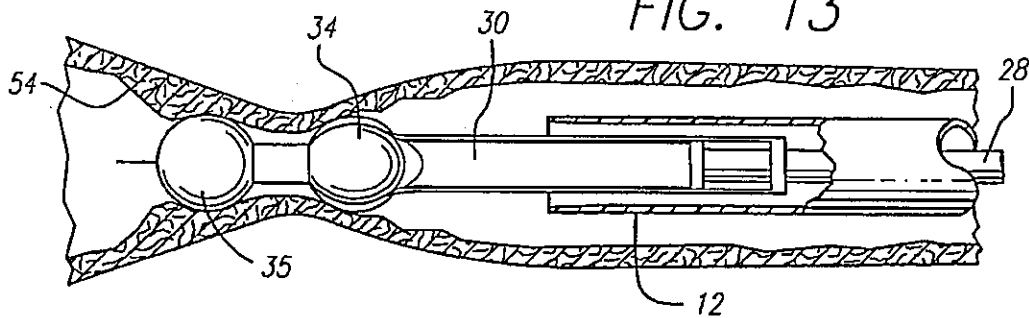


FIG. 14

US 7,406,970 B2

1

# METHOD OF USING EXPANDABLE VEIN LIGATOR CATHETER HAVING MULTIPLE ELECTRODE LEADS

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 09/866,517, filed May 25, 2001 now U.S. Pat. No. 6,769,433, which is a continuation of Ser. No. 09/267,756 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,237,606) filed on Mar. 10, 1999, which is a divisional of application Ser. No. 08/927,251 (now U.S. Pat. No. 6,200,312) filed on Sep. 11, 1997, the contents of which are all hereby incorporated by reference.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates generally to a method and apparatus for applying energy to shrink a hollow anatomical structure such as a vein, and more particularly, to a method and apparatus using an electrode device having multiple leads for applying said energy.

The human venous system of the lower limbs consists essentially of the superficial venous system and the deep venous system with perforating veins connecting the two systems. The superficial system includes the long or great saphenous vein and the short saphenous vein. The deep venous system includes the anterior and posterior tibial veins which unite to form the popliteal vein, which in turn becomes the femoral vein when joined by the short saphenous vein.

The venous system contains numerous one-way valves for directing blood flow back to the heart. Venous valves are usually bicuspid valves, with each cusp forming a sack or reservoir for blood which, under retrograde blood pressure, forces the free surfaces of the cusps together to prevent retrograde flow of the blood and allows only antegrade blood flow to the heart. When an incompetent valve is in the flow path, the valve is unable to close because the cusps do not form a proper seal and retrograde flow of the blood cannot be stopped. When a venous valve fails, increased strain and pressure occur within the lower venous sections and overlying tissues, sometimes leading to additional valvular failure. Two venous conditions which often result from valve failure are varicose veins and more symptomatic chronic venous insufficiency.

The varicose vein condition includes dilation and tortuosity of the superficial veins of the lower limbs, resulting in unsightly discoloration, pain, swelling, and possibly ulceration. Varicose veins often involve incompetence of one or more venous valves, which allow reflux of blood within the superficial system. This can also worsen deep venous reflux and perforator reflux. Current treatments of vein insufficiency include surgical procedures such as vein stripping, ligation, and occasionally, vein-segment transplant.

Ligation involves the cauterization or coagulation of vascular lumina using electrical energy applied through an electrode device. An electrode device is introduced into the vein lumen and positioned so that it contacts the vein wall. Once properly positioned, RF energy is applied to the electrode device thereby causing the vein wall to shrink in cross-sectional diameter. A reduction in cross-sectional diameter, as for example from 5 mm (0.2 in) to 1 mm (0.04 in), significantly reduces the flow of blood through the vein and results in an effective ligation. Though not required for effective ligation, the vein wall may completely collapse thereby resulting in a full-lumen obstruction that blocks the flow of blood through the vein.

One apparatus for performing venous ligation includes a tubular shaft having an electrode device attached at the distal tip. Running through the shaft, from the distal end to the

2

proximal end, are electrical leads. At the proximal end of the shaft, the leads terminate at an electrical connector, while at the distal end of the shaft the leads are connected to the electrode device. The electrical connector provides the interface between the leads and a power source, typically an RF generator. The RF generator operates under the guidance of a control device, usually a microprocessor.

The ligation apparatus may be operated in either a monopolar and bipolar configuration. In the monopolar configuration, the electrode device consists of an electrode that is either positively or negatively charged. A return path for the current passing through the electrode is provided externally from the body, as for example by placing the patient in physical contact with a large low-impedance pad. The current flows from the ligation device to the low impedance pad. In a bipolar configuration, the electrode device consists of a pair of oppositely charged electrodes separated by a dielectric material. Accordingly, in the bipolar mode, the return path for current is provided by the electrode device itself. The current flows from one electrode, through the tissue, and returns by way of the oppositely charged electrode.

To protect against tissue damage; i.e., charring, due to cauterization caused by overheating, a temperature sensing device is attached to the electrode device. The temperature sensing device may be a thermocouple that monitors the temperature of the venous tissue. The thermocouple interfaces with the RF generator and the controller through the shaft and provides electrical signals to the controller which monitors the temperature and adjusts the energy applied to the tissue, through the electrode device, accordingly.

The overall effectiveness of a ligation apparatus is largely dependent on the electrode device contained within the apparatus. Monopolar and bipolar electrode devices that comprise solid devices having a fixed shape and size limit the effectiveness of the ligating apparatus for several reasons. Firstly, a fixed-size electrode device typically contacts the vein wall at only one point on the circumference or inner diameter of the vein wall. As a result, the application of RF energy is highly concentrated within the contacting venous tissue, while the flow of RF current through the remainder of the venous tissue is disproportionately weak. Accordingly, the regions of the vein wall near the point of contact collapse at a faster rate than other regions of the vein wall, resulting in non-uniform shrinkage of the vein lumen. Furthermore, the overall strength of the occlusion may be inadequate and the lumen may eventually reopen. To avoid an inadequate occlusion RF energy must be applied for an extended period of time. Application of RF energy as such increases the temperature of the blood and usually results in a significant amount of heat-induced coagulum forming on the electrode and in the vein which is not desirable.

Secondly, the effectiveness of a ligating apparatus having a fixed electrode device is limited to certain sized veins. An attempt to ligate a vein having a diameter that is substantially greater than the electrode device can result in not only non-uniform shrinkage of the vein wall as just described, but also insufficient shrinkage of the vein. The greater the diameter of the vein relative to the diameter of the electrode device, the weaker the energy applied to the vein wall at points distant from the point of contact. Accordingly the vein wall is likely to not completely collapse prior to the venous tissue becoming over cauterized at the point of electrode contact. While coagulation as such may initially occlude the vein, such occlusion may only be temporary in that the coagulated blood may eventually dissolve and the vein partially open. One solution for this inadequacy is an apparatus having inter-

US 7,406,970 B2

3

changeable electrode devices with various diameters. Such a solution, however, is both economically inefficient and tedious to use.

Hence those skilled in the art have recognized a need for an expandable electrode device and a method capable of evenly distributing RF energy along a circumferential band of a vein wall where the vein wall is greater in diameter than the electrode device, and thereby provide more predictable and effective occlusion of veins while minimizing the formation of heat-induced coagulum. The invention fulfills these needs and others.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Briefly, and in general terms, the present invention provides an apparatus and method for applying energy along a generally circumferential band of a vein wall. The application of energy as such results in a more uniform and predictable shrinkage of the vein wall.

In one aspect of the invention, an apparatus for delivering energy to ligate an anatomical structure comprises a catheter having a sheath, a working end, and an opening formed at the working end of the catheter, an inner member disposed within the sheath such that the inner member and the sheath are capable of being moved relative to one another; a plurality of leads, each lead having a distal end, the plurality of leads being coupled with the inner member such that the distal ends of the plurality of leads extend out of the opening at the working end of the catheter when the position of the sheath changes in one direction relative to the inner member, each lead being formed to move the distal end away from a longitudinal axis defined by the sheath when the plurality of leads are extended out the opening; wherein the distal ends of the leads are configured to deliver energy to the anatomical structure.

In another aspect of the invention, the apparatus includes a secondary lead having a secondary distal end. The secondary lead is coupled with the inner member such that the distal end of the secondary lead is extended out of the opening at the working end of the catheter when the position of the inner member changes in one direction relative to the sheath.

In another aspect of the invention, the distal ends of the leads are electrically connected to a power source such that the polarity of each lead can be switched. Where there is a secondary lead electrode, the plurality of leads can be connected to the power source such that the polarity of the leads can be changed independently of the polarity of the secondary lead.

In another aspect, the leads include primary leads which generally surround the secondary lead at the working end of the catheter. The distal ends of the primary leads are located between the distal end of the secondary lead and the inner member.

In yet another aspect, the invention comprises a method of applying energy to a hollow anatomical structure from within the structure. The method includes the step of introducing a catheter into the anatomical structure; the catheter having a working end and a plurality of leads, each lead having a distal end, and each lead being connected to a power source. The method also includes the step of expanding the leads outwardly through the distal orifice and expanding the leads until each electrode contacts the anatomical structure. The method further includes the step of applying energy to the anatomical structure from the distal end of the leads, until the anatomical structure collapses.

In another aspect of the invention, the method also includes the step of introducing a catheter into the anatomical structure

4

where the catheter has a secondary lead that has a distal portion that is greater in length than the primary-lead distal portions and is generally surrounded by the primary leads. The secondary lead also has an electrode at the distal end. The method also includes the steps of extending the primary and secondary leads through the orifice until each primary-lead electrode contacts the anatomical structure, and controlling the power source so that adjacent primary leads are of opposite polarity while maintaining the secondary lead so that it is electrically neutral. Upon collapse of the anatomical structure around the primary leads, the polarity of the primary leads is switched so that they are all of the same polarity. Upon switching the polarity of the primary leads so that they are of the same polarity, controlling the power source so that the secondary lead is of opposite polarity relative to the primary leads. The method, in a further aspect, comprises the step of moving the catheter in the anatomical structure while continuing to apply energy to the anatomical structure to lengthen the area of ligation.

In another aspect of the invention, external compression is used to initially force the wall of the vein to collapse toward the catheter. The application of energy molds the vein to durably assume the collapsed state initially achieved mechanically by the external compression. A tourniquet can be used to externally compress or flatten the anatomical structure and initially reduce the diameter of the hollow anatomical structure. The pressure applied by the tourniquet can exsanguinate blood from the venous treatment site, and pre-shape the vein in preparation to be molded to a ligated state. An ultrasound window formed in the tourniquet can be used to facilitate ultrasound imaging of the anatomical structure being treated through the window.

These and other aspects and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the following more detailed description, when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings which illustrate, by way of example, embodiments of the invention.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a diagram of an energy application system with a partial cutaway view of a catheter showing both the working end and the connecting end and incorporating a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 2 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of a first embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully extended position;

FIG. 2a is an end view of the working end of the first embodiment of the catheter taken along line 2a-2a of FIG. 2;

FIG. 3 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the first embodiment depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 4 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of a second catheter in accordance with principles of the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully extended position;

FIG. 4a is an end view of the second embodiment of the invention taken along line 4a-4a of FIG. 4;

FIG. 5 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the second embodiment of the catheter of FIG. 4 depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 6 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 2 with the electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure;

FIG. 6a is an end view of the anatomical structure containing the catheter taken along line 6a-6a of FIG. 6;

FIGS. 7a through 7c are cross-sectional views of the anatomical structure containing a catheter in accordance with the

US 7,406,970 B2

5

first embodiment of the invention and depicting the anatomical structure at various stages of ligation;

FIG. 8 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing a catheter in accordance with the second embodiment of the invention as depicted in FIG. 4;

FIG. 8a is an end view of the anatomical structure containing the catheter taken along line 8a-8a of FIG. 8; and

FIGS. 9a and 9b are cross-sectional views of the anatomical structure containing the catheter in accordance with the second embodiment of the invention and depicting the anatomical structure at various stages of ligation;

FIG. 10 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of a third embodiment of a catheter in accordance with the invention depicting the electrodes in a fully extended position;

FIG. 10a is an end view of the working end of the third embodiment of the catheter taken along line 10a-10a of FIG. 10;

FIG. 11 is a cross-sectional view of the working end of the third embodiment depicting the electrodes in a fully retracted position;

FIG. 12 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 10 with the electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure;

FIG. 13 is a cross-sectional view of the anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 10 where the anatomical structure is being ligated by the application of energy from the electrodes.

FIG. 14 is a cross-sectional view of an anatomical structure containing the catheter of FIG. 10 with the electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure where external compression is being applied to reduce the diameter of the hollow structure before the application of energy from the electrodes to ligate the structure.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENTS

Turning now to the drawings with more particularity wherein like reference numerals indicate like or corresponding elements among the figures, shown in FIG. 1 is a catheter 10 for applying energy to an anatomical structure such as a vein. The catheter 10 includes an outer sheath 12 having a distal orifice 14 at its working end 15. The connector end 17 of the outer sheath 12 is attached to a handle 16 that includes an electrical connector 18 for interfacing with a power source 22, typically an RF generator, and a microprocessor controller 23. The power source 22 and microprocessor 23 are usually contained in one unit. The controller 23 controls the power source 22 in response to external commands and data from a sensor, such as a thermocouple, located at an intraluminal venous treatment site. In another embodiment, the user can select a constant power output so that automated temperature control is not present and the user can manually adjust the power output in view of the temperature on a display readout. The catheter 10 includes an expandable electrode device 24 (partially shown) that moves in and out of the outer sheath 12 by way of the distal orifice 14. The electrode device includes a plurality of electrodes which can be expanded by moving the electrodes within the shaft, or by moving the outer shaft relative to the electrodes. Although FIG. 1 illustrates a plurality of electrodes surrounding a single central electrode, different electrode configurations will be described for the catheter.

Contained within the outer sheath 12 is an inner sheath 28 or inner member. A fluid port 21 communicates with the interior of the outer sheath 12. The catheter 10 can be periodically flushed out with saline through the port 21. The

6

flushing fluid can travel between the outer sheath and the inner sheath. The port also allows for the delivery of drug therapies. Flushing out the catheter prevents the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter 10. The treatment area of the hollow anatomical structure such as a vein can be flushed with a fluid such as saline, or a dielectric fluid, in order to evacuate blood from the treatment area of the vein so as to prevent the formation of coagulum or thrombosis. The use of a dielectric fluid can minimize unintended heating effects away from the treatment area. The dielectric fluid prevents the current of RF energy from flowing away from the vein wall.

In one embodiment, the catheter 10 includes a lumen which begins at the distal tip of the outer sheath 12 and runs substantially along the axis of the outer sheath 12 before terminating at the guide-wire port 20 of the handle 16. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen of the catheter 10 for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. Where the catheter is sized to treat smaller veins, the outer diameter of the catheter may not allow for a fluid flush between the outer sheath 12 and the inner sheath 28. However, a fluid flush can be introduced through the lumen for the guide wire in such an embodiment.

Referring now to FIGS. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a and 5, the outer sheath 12 includes a shell 44 and a tip portion 46. To provide an atraumatic tip for the catheter 10 as it is manipulated through the vein, the tip 46 is preferably tapered inward at its distal end or is "nosecone" shaped. The tip 46, however, can have other shapes that facilitate tracking of the catheter 10 over a guide wire and through the bends in the venous vascular system. The nosecone-shaped tip 46 can, for example, be fabricated from a polymer having a soft durometer, such as 70 Shore A. The shell 44 comprises a biocompatible material having a low coefficient of friction. In one configuration, the outer sheath 12 is sized to fit within a venous lumen and for example may be between 5 and 9 French, which corresponds to a diameter of between 1.7 mm (0.07 in) and 3.0 mm (1.2 in), or other sizes as appropriate.

The electrode device 24 contains a number of leads, including insulated primary leads 30 and, in some embodiments, a secondary lead 31. Preferably, the leads are connected to the power source 22 (FIG. 1) such that the polarity of the leads may be switched as desired. Alternately, a microprocessor controller can be used to switch the polarity, as well as control other characteristics of the power for the electrode device. Thus the electrode device can operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads 30 have opposite polarity the electrode device 24 operates as a bipolar electrode device. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged the electrode device 24 can operate as a monopolar electrode device. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged, and a secondary lead 31 has an opposite polarity, the electrode device 24 operates as a bipolar electrode device. The embodiment of the invention shown in FIGS. 2 and 3 depict an electrode device 24 having four primary leads 30 and a secondary lead 31, while the embodiment of the invention shown in FIGS. 4 and 5 depict an electrode device 24 having only four primary leads. The invention is not limited to four primary leads 30; more or fewer leads may be used in either embodiment. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the hollow anatomical structure to be treated. The apposed electrodes should be kept within a certain distance of one another. Larger vessels may require more primary leads to ensure proper current density and proper heat distribution.

The insulation on each of the leads 30, 31 may be removed at the distal end 32, 33 to expose the conductive wire. In the



US 7,406,970 B2

7

first configuration as shown in FIGS. 2, 2a, and 3, the electrode 34 has a hemispherical shape. In a second configuration, the electrode can have either a generally spherical shape or a spoon shape. As shown in FIGS. 4, 4a and 5, the electrodes have a spoon shape which can be combined to form a sphere or other shape so as to minimize its profile when the vein collapses. The electrodes 34 are either integrally formed at the distal end 32, soldered, or otherwise formed to the distal end of each primary lead 30. It is to be understood that when the distal end 32 is referred to as acting as an electrode, this is not limited to where the electrode 34 is integrally formed at the distal end 32. For example, the distal end can apply energy to the surrounding tissue where there is an electrode integrally formed at the distal end, or where an electrode is separately soldered to the distal end, or where there is another energy delivery device located at the distal end. The electrode 34 typically has a diameter greater than the diameter of the primary lead 30. For example, the primary lead 30 may have a diameter ranging from 0.18 mm (0.007 in.) to 0.28 mm (0.011 in.), while the electrode 34 has a diameter of 0.36 mm (0.014 in.) to 0.51 mm (0.020 in.). The primary leads 30 and the electrodes 34 are preferably made from a biologically-compatible material such as stainless steel. The insulation surrounding the primary leads 30 generally has a thickness of between 0.03 mm (0.001 in.) and 0.06 mm (0.0025 in.), resulting in a combined lead-insulation diameter of between 0.23 mm (0.009 in.) and 0.41 mm (0.016 in.). In an alternate configuration, as shown in FIGS. 2 and 3, each primary lead 30 is strip-shaped with a width from 0.76 mm (0.03 in.) to 1.0 mm (0.04 in.) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005 in.), while the secondary lead 31 is typically tubular-shaped. It should be noted that these dimensions are provided for illustrative purposes, and not by way of limitation. A hemispherically shaped electrode 34 is formed at the distal end, as for example, by sanding down a sixteenth-inch (1.6 mm) diameter sphere which is soldered to the distal end 32 of the primary lead 30. The electrodes can also be constructed by stamping the desired shape or configuration from the conductive lead. The electrode is integral with the lead, and the remainder of the lead is insulated. The distal end 33 of the secondary lead 31 preferably includes a generally spherically-shaped electrode 35.

An alignment device 36 arranges the leads 30, 31 such that they are mounted to the catheter at only their proximal ends and so that separation is maintained between the leads within, and distal to the alignment device. The leads can form cantilevers when mounted on the alignment device. A preferred configuration of the alignment device 36 includes a plurality of off-center, axially-aligned lumina 38 which are substantially symmetrically positioned relative to the axis of the alignment device 36. The alignment device 36 is formed, for example, by extruding the plurality of axially-aligned lumina 38 through a solid cylinder composed of a dielectric material, such as polyamide. Each lead 30 passes through an individual off-center lumen 38 and exits out the rear of the alignment device 36. The alignment device 36 may further include a central lumen 48 that may be aligned with the axis. In some embodiments the central lumen 48 is used for accepting a guide wire or for the delivery or perfusion of medicant and cooling solution to the treatment area during application of RF energy. In other embodiments, the central lumen 48 may be used for the secondary lead 31. The alignment device 36 may also further include an auxiliary lumen 47 for additional leads, such as the leads of a thermocouple used as a temperature sensor. The alignment device 36 comprises a dielectric material to prevent or minimize any coupling effect the leads 30, 31 may have with each other and, if present, the guide

8

wire. The length of the alignment device is, for example, 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) to 19.0 mm (0.75 in.) in one embodiment. However, these dimensions are provided for purposes of illustration and not by way of limitation.

In the embodiment of the invention shown in FIGS. 2, 2a and 3, the inner sheath 28 is attached to the alignment device 36 and extends beyond the rear 37 of the alignment device. Preferably, the inner sheath 28 completely surrounds the exterior wall of the alignment device 36 and is mounted to it by adhesive or press fit or in other manner such that it remains in a fixed position relative to the inner sheath. The inner sheath and alignment device can act as an inner member relative to the outer sheath. The inner sheath 28 comprises a biocompatible material with a low coefficient of friction. The inner sheath 28 provides a pathway for the interconnection between the leads 30, 31 and the electrical connector 18 (FIG. 1). This interconnection may occur in any of several ways. The leads 30, 31 themselves may be continuous and run the entire length of the inner sheath 28. In the alternative (not shown), the positively charged leads 30, 31 may couple with a common positively charged conductor housed in the inner sheath 28. Likewise, the negatively charged leads 30, 31 may couple with a common negative conductor. Preferably, the leads 30, 31 are connected to a conductor that allows for the polarity of the leads to be switched. The conductor may comprise, for example, a 36 gauge copper lead with a polyurethane coating. The coupling may occur at any point within the inner sheath 28. To reduce the amount of wire contained in the catheter, it is advantageous to couple the leads 30, 31 at the point where the leads exit the rear 37 of the alignment device 36. To add further stability to the electrode device 24, it is preferred that bonding material 40 surround the leads 30, 31 at the front end of the alignment device 36. In this embodiment, the leads 30, 31 exit through the distal orifice 14 as the outer sheath 12 is retracted backwards over the alignment device 36. The inwardly tapered tip 46 impedes the retracting movement of the outer sheath 12 to prevent the exposure of the alignment device 36.

FIG. 3 shows the leads 30 and 31 in the retracted position where all leads are within the nosecone-shaped tip portion 46 and the outer shell 44. The alignment device 36 has been moved relative to the outer shell 44. The soft nosecone provides an atraumatic tip for when the catheter is maneuvered through the tortuous venous system. The electrode at the distal end of the secondary lead 31 can be sized to approximately the same size as the opening formed in the nosecone 46. The nosecone forms a closed atraumatic tip together with the electrode of the secondary lead when the alignment device is retracted into the outer sheath of the catheter. This can present an atraumatic tip even where the nosecone is not constructed from a material having a soft durometer.

Referring now to FIGS. 4 and 5, in another embodiment, the alignment device 36 is attached to the outer sheath 12 and thereby remains immobile in relation to it. The inner sheath 28 is movably positioned at the rear of the alignment device 36 and again provides a pathway for the interconnection between the primary leads 30 and the electrical connector 18 (FIG. 1). In some embodiments the inner sheath 28 contains a guide-wire tube 49 that runs the entire length of the inner sheath. The guide-wire tube 49 is aligned to communicate with the central lumen 48 of the alignment device 36 at one end and with the guide-wire port 20 (FIG. 1) at the other end. The primary leads 30 may be continuous and run the entire length of the inner sheath 28 or they may be coupled to common leads as previously described. The primary leads 30 are secured to the front end 27 of the inner sheath 28, as for example with a potting material 50, so that the movement of

US 7,406,970 B2

9

the inner sheath 28 results in a corresponding movement of the primary leads 30 through the lumina 38 of the alignment device 36. In this embodiment, the primary leads 30 are not secured to the alignment device 36 and in essence are free-floating leads in the axial direction. The primary leads 30 travel through the alignment device 36 and exit through the distal orifice 14 as the front end of the inner sheath 28 is moved toward the rear 37 of the alignment device 36.

In the above embodiments, the primary leads 30 are formed, e.g., arced or bent, to move away from each other and thereby avoid contact. The "distal portion" of the primary leads 30 is the portion of the lead which extends from the front end of the alignment device 36 when the leads are fully extended through the distal orifice 14. It is preferred that the distal portions 42 are formed to move radially outward from each other relative to the axis of the alignment device 36 and form a symmetrical arrangement. This is shown in both the embodiments of FIG. 2a and FIG. 4a. The degree of arc or bend in the primary leads 30 may be any that is sufficient to radially expand the leads as they exit the outer sheath 12 through the distal orifice 14. It is essential that the degree of the arc or bend be sufficient to provide enough force so that the primary leads 30 expand through blood and the electrodes 34 come in apposition with the vein wall. The electrodes are preferably partially embedded in the vein wall to assure full contact. The rounded portion of the electrode is embedded into the vein wall to achieve full surface apposition so that the entire uninsulated surface area of the electrode is in contact with venous tissue for effective current distribution. The surface area of the electrodes in contact with the venous tissue preferably is sufficient to avoid a high current density which may lead to spot heating of the venous tissue. The heating effect is preferably distributed along a circumferential band of the vein. The apposed electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters from one another along the circumference of the vein. Thus, the electrode arrangement is related to the size or diameter of the vein being treated. Other properties of the primary leads 30, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. For example, in one configuration of the electrode device 24, a wire having a diameter of between 0.18 mm (0.007 in) and 0.28 mm (0.011 in) with a total insulation thickness of between 0.05 mm (0.002 in) to 0.13 mm (0.005 in) is arced or bent at an acute angle to provide sufficient apposition with the anatomical structure. It is to be understood that these dimensions are provided for illustrative purposes, and not by way of limitation.

Other techniques for expanding the leads outwardly once they have been extended from the working end of the catheter may be possible. For example, the leads may be straight but are mounted in the alignment device at an angle such that they are normally directed outward.

For increased appositional force, it is preferred that the primary leads 30 be strip-shaped, that is rectangular in cross section, with dimensions, for example, of a width from 0.76 mm (0.030 in.) to 1.0 mm (0.039 in) and a thickness of approximately 0.13 mm (0.005 in.). The rectangular cross section provides increased resistance to bending in the width dimension but allows bending more freely in the thickness dimension. This strip-shaped configuration of the primary leads 30 is shown in FIGS. 2, 2a, and 3 and provides for increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. In FIGS. 2, 2a, and 3, each primary lead comprises a rectangular cross section mounted in relation to the catheter such that the thinner dimension of the rectangular cross section is aligned with the

10

direction of expansion of the lead. The leads are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward, and a uniform spacing between leads is more assured. Uniform spacing promotes uniform heating around the venous tissue which is in apposition with the electrodes at the distal ends of the leads.

The length of the distal portion of the leads 30 also affects the configuration of the electrode device 24. The maximum distance between two mutually opposed electrodes 34; i.e., the effective diameter of the electrode device 24, is affected by the bend degree and length of the distal portion 42. The longer the length of the distal portion 42 the greater the diameter of the electrode device 24. Accordingly, by changing the distal portion 42 length and arc or bend degree, the catheter 10 can be configured for use in differently sized anatomical structures.

Different numbers of leads 30, 31 can be employed with the catheter. The number of leads 30, 31 is limited by the diameter of the alignment device 36 and the number of lumina 36, 38, 47 that can be extruded through the alignment device. In a bipolar configuration, an even number of primary leads 30 are preferably available to form a number of oppositely charged electrode pairs. The electrodes in apposition with the anatomical structure should be maintained within a certain distance of each other. In a monopolar configuration, any number of commonly charged leads 30 can be present. In the monopolar mode, distribution of RF energy through the anatomical tissue is obtained by creating a return path for current through the tissue by providing a return device at a point external from the tissue, such as a large metal pad.

Now referring again to FIG. 1, an actuator 25 controls the extension of the electrode device 24 through the distal orifice 14. The actuator 25 may take the form of a switch, lever, threaded control knob, or other suitable mechanism, and is preferably one that can provide fine control over the movement of the outer sheath 12 or the inner sheath 28, as the case may be. In one embodiment of the invention, the actuator 25 (FIG. 1) interfaces with the outer sheath 12 (FIGS. 2, 2a and 3) to move it back and forth relative to the inner sheath 28. In another embodiment the actuator 25 (FIG. 1) interfaces with the inner sheath 28 (FIGS. 4, 4a and 5) to move it back and forth relative to the outer sheath 12. The relative position between the outer sheath and inner sheath is thus controlled, but other control approaches may be used.

Referring again to FIGS. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a and 5, the catheter 10 includes a temperature sensor 26, such as a thermocouple. The temperature sensor 26 is mounted in place on an electrode 34 so that the sensor 26 is nearly or is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 34. The sensor 26 is shown in the drawings as protruding from the electrodes for clarity of illustration only. The sensor 26 senses the temperature of the portion of the anatomical tissue that is in apposition with the exposed electrode surface. Monitoring the temperature of the anatomical tissue provides a good indication of when shrinkage of the tissue is ready to begin. A temperature sensor 26 placed on the electrode facing the anatomical tissue provides an indication of when shrinkage occurs (70° C. or higher) and when significant amounts of heat-induced coagulum may begin to form on the electrodes (at 85° C. or higher). Therefore maintaining the temperature above 70 degrees Centigrade produces a therapeutic shrinkage of the anatomical structure. Application of the RF energy from the electrodes 34 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, typically the temperature at which anatomical tissue begins to cauterize. The temperature sensor 26 interfaces with the controller 23 (FIG. 1) through a pair of sensor leads 45 which preferably run through the auxiliary



US 7,406,970 B2

11

lumen 47 and then through the inner sheath 28. The signals from the temperature sensor 26 are provided to the controller 23 which controls the magnitude of RF energy supplied to the electrodes 34 in accordance with the selected temperature criteria and the monitored temperature. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring, and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein is detected and to avoid overheating the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 6, 6a and 7a through 7c, in the operation of one embodiment of the catheter 10, the catheter is inserted into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein 52. The catheter is similar to the embodiment discussed in connection with FIGS. 2 and 3. The catheter 10 further includes an external sheath 60 through which a fluid can be delivered to the treatment site. In this embodiment, the fluid port (not shown) communicates with the interior of the external sheath 60, and fluid is delivered from between the external sheath 60 and the outer sheath 12. The external sheath 60 surrounds the outer sheath 12 to form a coaxial channel through which fluid may be flushed.

Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or other technique may be used to direct the specific placement of the catheter and confirm the position in the vein. The actuator (not shown) is then operated to shift the outer sheath relative to the inner sheath by either retracting the outer sheath 12 backward or advancing the inner sheath 28 forward to expose the leads 30, 31 through the distal orifice 14. As the leads 30, 31 exit the distal orifice 14, the primary leads 30 expand radially outward relative to the axis of the alignment device 36, while the secondary lead 31 remains substantially linear. The primary leads 30 continue to move outward until apposition with the vein wall 54 occurs and the outward movement of the primary leads 30 is impeded. The primary leads 30 contact the vein along a generally circumferential band of the vein wall 54. This outward movement of the primary leads 30 occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion. As a result, the primary-lead electrodes 34 are substantially evenly spaced along the circumferential band of the vein wall 54. The central-lead electrode 35 is suspended within the vein 52 without contacting the vein wall 54.

When the electrodes 34 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the power supply 22 is activated to provide suitable RF energy, preferably at a selected frequency from a range of 250 kHz to 350 MHz. One suitable frequency is 510 kHz. One criterion used in selecting the frequency of the energy to be applied is the control desired over the spread, including the depth, of the thermal effect in the venous tissue. Another criterion is compatibility with filter circuits for eliminating RF noise from thermocouple signals.

In bipolar operation, the primary leads 30 are initially charged such that adjacent leads are oppositely charged while the secondary lead is electrically neutral. These multiple pairs of oppositely charged leads 30 form active electrode pairs to produce an RF field between them. Thus, discrete RF fields are set up along the circumferential band of the vein wall 54. These discrete fields form a symmetrical RF field pattern along the entire circumferential band of the vein wall 54, as adjacent electrodes 34 of opposite polarity produce RF fields between each other. A uniform temperature distribution can be achieved along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy is converted within the adjacent venous tissue into heat, and this thermal effect causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein. A uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated avoids the formation of hot spots in the treatment area while

12

promoting controlled uniform reduction in vein diameter. The thermal effect produces structural transfiguration of the collagen fibrils in the vein. The collagen fibrils shorten and thicken in cross-section in response to the heat from the thermal effect. As shown in FIG. 7a, the energy causes the vein wall 54 to collapse around the primary-lead electrodes 34. The wall 54 continues to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the electrodes 34. The electrodes are pressed farther and farther together by the shrinking vein wall 54 until they touch and at that point, further collapse or ligation of the wall 54 is impeded. Upon collapse of the vein wall 54 around the primary-lead electrodes 34, the polarity of the primary-lead electrodes is switched so that all primary-lead electrodes are commonly charged. The switching of polarity for the leads need not be instantaneous. The application of RF energy can be ceased, the polarity switched, and then RF energy is applied again at the switched polarity. The secondary-lead electrode 35 is then charged so that its polarity is opposite that of the primary-lead electrodes 34. The RF field is set up between the primary-lead electrodes 34 and the secondary-lead electrode 35.

The catheter 10 is then pulled back while energy is applied to the electrode device. As shown in FIG. 7b, while the catheter 10 is being pulled back, the primary-lead electrodes 34 remain in apposition with the vein wall 54 while the secondary-lead electrode 35 comes in contact with the portion of the vein wall previously collapsed by the primary-lead electrodes 34. Accordingly, RF energy passes through the vein wall 54 between the primary-lead electrodes 34 and the secondary-lead electrode 35 and the vein wall continues to collapse around the secondary-lead electrode 35 as the catheter 10 is being retracted. As shown in FIG. 7c, ligation in accordance with this method results in an occlusion along a length of the vein 52. A lengthy occlusion, as opposed to an acute occlusion, is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization.

A similar result is achieved when the catheter 10 having both primary and secondary leads is operated in a monopolar manner. In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 35 remains neutral, while the primary leads 30 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form a series of discrete RF fields. These RF fields are substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein and travel along the axial length of the vein wall causing the vein wall to collapse around the primary-lead electrodes. Upon collapse of the vein wall, the secondary-lead electrode is charged to have the same polarity as that of the primary-lead electrodes. The electrode device is retracted and the vein wall collapses as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall, regardless of the diameter of the vein 52. This symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion. Furthermore, the uniform distribution of energy allows for the application of RF energy for a short duration and thereby reduces or avoids the formation of heat-induced coagulum on the electrodes 34. The leads, including the non-convex outer portion of the electrode, are insulated to further prevent heating of the surrounding blood.

Fluid can be delivered before and during RF heating of the vein being treated through a coaxial channel formed between the external sheath 60 and the outer sheath 12. It is to be understood that another lumen can be formed in the catheter to deliver fluid to the treatment site. The delivered fluid displaces or exsanguinates blood from the vein so as to avoid

US 7,406,970 B2

13

heating and coagulation of blood. Fluid can continue to be delivered during RF treatment to prevent blood from circulating back to the treatment site. The delivery of a dielectric fluid increases the surrounding impedance so that RF energy is directed into the tissue of the vein wall.

Referring now to FIGS. 8, 8a, 9a and 9b, in the operation of an alternate embodiment of the catheter 10 that may be used with a guide wire 53. As in the previous embodiment, the catheter 10 is inserted into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein 52. The guide wire 53 is advanced past the point where energy application is desired. The catheter 10 is then inserted over the guide wire 53 by way of the central lumen 48 and the guide wire tube 49 (FIG. 4) and is advanced over the guide wire through the vein to the desired point. The guide wire 53 is typically pulled back or removed before RF energy is applied to the electrode device 24.

The actuator 25 (FIG. 1) is then manipulated to either retract the outer sheath 12 backward, or advance the inner sheath 28 forward to expose the leads 30 through the distal orifice 14. The leads 30 exit the distal orifice 14 and expand radially outward relative to the axis of the alignment device 36. The leads 30 continue to move outward until apposition with the vein wall 54 occurs. The leads 30 contact the vein along a generally circumferential band of the vein wall 54. This outward movement of the leads occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion. As a result, the electrodes 34 are substantially evenly spaced along the circumferential band of the vein wall 54. Alternately, the electrodes can be spaced apart in a staggered fashion such that the electrodes do not lie along the same plane. For example, adjacent electrodes can extend different lengths from the catheter so that a smaller cross-sectional profile is achieved when the electrodes are collapsed toward one another.

When the electrodes 34 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the power supply 22 is activated to provide suitable RF energy to the electrodes 34 so that the catheter 10 operates in either a bipolar or monopolar manner as previously described. As shown in FIGS. 9a and 9b, the energy causes the vein wall 54 to collapse around the electrodes 34 causing the leads to substantially straighten and the electrodes to cluster around each other. The wall 54 continues to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the electrodes 34 (FIG. 9b). At this point the application of energy may cease. The electrodes can be configured to form a shape with a reduced profile when collapsed together. The electrodes can also be configured and insulated to continue applying RF energy after forming a reduced profile shape by the collapse of the vein wall. The catheter 10 can be pulled back to ligate the adjacent venous segment. If a temperature sensor 26 is included, the application of energy may cease prior to complete collapse if the temperature of the venous tissue rises above an acceptable level as defined by the controller 23.

Where the catheter includes a fluid delivery lumen (not shown), fluid can be delivered before and during RF heating of the vein being treated. The fluid can displace blood from the treatment area in the vein to avoid the coagulation of blood. The fluid can be a dielectric medium. The fluid can include an anticoagulant such as heparin which can chemically discourage the coagulation of blood at the treatment site.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section, the actuator mechanism causes the primary leads to return to the interior of the outer sheath 12. Either the outer sheath or the inner sheath is moved to change the position of the two elements relative to one another. Once the leads 30 are within the outer sheath 12, the catheter 10 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated. Upon treatment of all venous sites, the catheter 10 is removed

14

from the vasculature. The access point of the vein is then sutured closed, or local pressure is applied until bleeding is controlled.

Another embodiment of the catheter is illustrated in FIG. 10. The inner member or sheath 28 is contained within the outer sheath 12. The inner sheath is preferably constructed from a flexible polymer such as polyimide, polyethylene, or nylon, and can travel the entire length of the catheter. The majority of the catheter should be flexible so as to navigate the tortuous paths of the venous system. A hypotube having a flared distal end 33 and a circular cross-sectional shape is attached over the distal end of the inner sheath 28. The hypotube is preferably no more than about two to three centimeters in length. The hypotube acts as part of the conductive secondary lead 31. An uninsulated conductive electrode sphere 35 is slipped over the hypotube. The flared distal end of the hypotube prevents the electrode sphere from moving beyond the distal end of the hypotube. The sphere is permanently affixed to the hypotube, such as by soldering the sphere both front and back on the hypotube. The majority or the entire surface of the spherical electrode 35 remains uninsulated. The remainder of the hypotube is preferably insulated so that the sphere-shaped distal end can act as the electrode. For example, the hypotube can be covered with an insulating material such as a coating of parylene. The interior lumen of the hypotube is lined by the inner sheath 28 which is attached to the flared distal end of the hypotube by adhesive such as epoxy.

Surrounding the secondary lead 31 and sphere-shaped electrode 35 are a plurality of primary leads 30 which preferably have a flat rectangular strip shape and can act as arms. As illustrated in FIG. 11, the plurality of primary leads are preferably connected to common conductive rings 62. This configuration maintains the position of the plurality of primary leads, while reducing the number of internal electrical connections. The rings 62 are attached to the inner sheath 28. The position of the rings and the primary leads relative to the outer sheath follows that of the inner sheath. As earlier described, the hypotube of the secondary lead 31 is also attached to the inner sheath 28. Two separate conductive rings can be used so that the polarity of different primary leads can be controlled separately. For example, adjacent primary leads can be connected to one of the two separate conductive rings so that the adjacent leads can be switched to have either opposite polarities or the same polarity. The rings are preferably spaced closely together, but remain electrically isolated from one another along the inner sheath. Both the rings and the hypotube are coupled with the inner sheath, and the primary leads 30 that are connected to the rings move together with and secondary lead while remaining electrically isolated from one another. Epoxy or another suitable adhesive can be used to attach the rings to the inner sheath. The primary leads from the respective rings each alternate with each other along the circumference of the inner sheath. The insulation along the underside of the leads prevents an electrical short between the rings.

The ring and primary leads are attached together to act as cantilevers where the ring forms the base and the rectangular primary leads operate as the cantilever arms. The leads 30 are connected to the ring and are formed to have an arc or bend such that the leads act as arms which tend to spring outwardly away from the catheter and toward the surrounding venous tissue. Insulation along the underside of the leads and the rings prevents unintended electrical coupling between the leads and the opposing rings. Alternately, the leads are formed straight and connected to the ring at an angle, such that the leads tend to expand or spring radially outward from the ring.

US 7,406,970 B2

15

The angle at which the leads are attached to the ring should be sufficient to force the primary distal ends and electrodes 34 through blood and into apposition with the vein wall. Other properties of the primary leads 30, such as lead shape and insulation thickness, affect the push force of the lead and the degree of arc or bend must be adjusted to compensate for these factors. The rectangular cross section of the leads 30 can provide increased stability in the lateral direction while allowing the necessary bending in the radial direction. The leads 30 are less likely to bend sideways when expanded outward, and a uniform spacing between leads is more assured. Uniform spacing between the leads 30 and the distal ends promotes uniform heating around the vein by the electrodes 34.

The distal ends of the primary leads 30 are uninsulated to act as electrodes 34 having a spoon or hemispherical shape. The leads can be stamped to produce an integral shaped electrode at the distal end of the lead. The uninsulated outer portion of the distal end electrode 34 which is to come into apposition with the wall of the anatomical structure is preferably rounded and convex. The flattened or non-convex inner portion of the distal end is insulated to minimize any unintended thermal effect, such as on the surrounding blood in a vein. The distal end electrodes 34 are configured such that when the distal ends are forced toward the inner sheath 12, as shown in FIG. 10a, the distal ends combine to form a substantially spherical shape with a profile smaller than the profile for the spherical electrode 35 at the secondary distal end.

The outer sheath 12 can slide over and surround the primary and secondary leads 30, 31. The outer sheath 12 includes an orifice which is dimensioned to have approximately the same size as the spherical electrode 35 at the secondary distal end which functions as an electrode. A close or snug fit between the electrode 35 at the secondary distal end and the orifice of the outer sheath 12 is achieved. This configuration provides an atraumatic tip for the catheter. The electrode 35 secondary distal end is preferably slightly larger than the orifice. The inner diameter of the outer sheath 12 is approximately the same as the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 34. The diameter of the reduced profile of the combined primary distal end electrodes 34 is preferably less than the inner diameter of the outer sheath.

A fluid port (not shown) can communicate with the interior of the outer sheath 12 so that fluid can be flushed between the outer sheath 12 and the inner sheath 28. Alternately, a fluid port can communicate with a central lumen 48 in the hypotube which can also accept a guidewire. As previously stated, the catheter 10 can be periodically flushed with saline which can prevent the buildup of biological fluid, such as blood, within the catheter 10. A guide wire can be introduced through the lumen 48 for use in guiding the catheter to the desired treatment site. As previously described, a fluid can be flushed or delivered through the lumen as well. If a central lumen is not desired, the lumen of the hypotube can be filled with solder.

Preferably, the primary leads 30 and the connecting rings are connected to a power source 22 such that the polarity of the leads may be switched as desired. This allows for the electrode device 24 to operate in either a bipolar or a monopolar configuration. When adjacent primary leads 30 have opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation is available. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged a monopolar electrode operation is available in combination with a large return electrode pad placed in contact with the patient. When the primary leads 30 are commonly charged, and a secondary lead 31 has an opposite polarity, a bipolar electrode operation

16

is available. More or fewer leads may be used. The number of leads can be dependent on the size or diameter of the hollow anatomical structure to be treated.

Although not shown, it is to be understood that the catheter 10 can include a temperature sensor, such as a thermocouple, mounted in place on the distal end or electrode 34 so that the sensor is substantially flush with the exposed surface of the electrode 34. The sensor senses the temperature of the portion of the anatomical tissue that is in apposition with the exposed electrode surface. Application of the RF energy from the electrodes 34 is halted or reduced when the monitored temperature reaches or exceeds the specific temperature that was selected by the operator, such as the temperature at which anatomical tissue begins to cauterize. Other techniques such as impedance monitoring, and ultrasonic pulse echoing can be utilized in an automated system which shuts down or regulates the application of RF energy from the electrodes to the venous section when sufficient shrinkage of the vein is detected and to avoid overheating the vein.

Referring now to FIGS. 12 through 14, in the operation of one embodiment of the catheter 10, the catheter is inserted into a hollow anatomical structure, such as a vein. Fluoroscopy, ultrasound, an angioscope imaging technique, or another technique may be used to direct and confirm the specific placement of the catheter in the vein. The actuator is then operated to retract the outer sheath 12 to expose the leads 30, 31. As the outer sheath no longer restrains the leads, the primary leads 30 move outward relative to the axis defined by the outer sheath, while the secondary lead 31 remains substantially linear along the axis defined by the outer sheath. The primary leads 30 continue to move outward until the distal end electrode 34 of the primary leads are placed in apposition with the vein wall 54 occurs and the outward movement of the primary leads 30 is impeded. The primary leads 30 contact the vein along a generally circumferential area of the vein wall 54. This outward movement of the primary leads 30 occurs in a substantially symmetrical fashion so that the primary distal end electrodes 34 are substantially evenly spaced. The central-lead electrode 35 is suspended within the vein without contacting the vein wall 54.

When the electrodes 34 are positioned at the treatment site of the vein, the power supply 22 is activated to provide suitable RF energy. In a bipolar operation, the primary leads 30 are initially charged such that adjacent leads are oppositely charged while the secondary lead is electrically neutral. These multiple pairs of oppositely charged leads 30 form active electrode pairs to produce an RF field between them, and form a symmetrical RF field pattern along a circumferential band of the vein wall to achieve a uniform temperature distribution along the vein wall being treated.

The RF energy produces a thermal effect which causes the venous tissue to shrink, reducing the diameter of the vein. As shown in FIG. 13, the energy causes the vein wall 54 to collapse until further collapse is impeded by the electrodes 34. The electrodes are pressed closer together by the shrinking vein wall. The electrodes 34 are pressed together to assume a reduced profile shape which is sufficiently small so that the vein is effectively ligated. Upon collapse of the vein wall 54 around the primary-lead electrodes 34, the polarity of the primary-lead electrodes is switched so that all of the primary-lead electrodes are commonly charged. The secondary-lead electrode 35 is then charged so that its polarity is opposite that of the primary-lead electrodes 34. Where the primary electrodes 34 and the secondary electrode 35 are spaced sufficiently close together, when the vein wall collapses around the primary lead electrodes, the electrode at the distal end of the secondary lead can also come into contact



US 7,406,970 B2

17

with the a portion of the vein wall so that an RF field is created between the primary electrodes 34 and the secondary electrode 35.

The catheter 10 is pulled back to ensure apposition between the electrodes at the distal ends of the leads and the vein wall. When the catheter 10 is being pulled back, the primary-lead electrodes 34 remain in apposition with the vein wall 54 while the secondary-lead electrode 35 comes in contact with the portion of the vein wall previously collapsed by the primary-lead electrodes 34. RF energy passes through the venous tissue between the primary-lead electrodes 34 and the secondary-lead electrode 35. Ligation as the catheter is being retracted produces a lengthy occlusion which is stronger and less susceptible to recanalization than an acute point occlusion.

In a monopolar operation, the secondary-lead electrode 35 remains neutral, while the primary leads 30 are commonly charged and act in conjunction with an independent electrical device, such as a large low-impedance return pad (not shown) placed in external contact with the body, to form RF fields substantially evenly spaced around the circumference of the vein. The thermal effect produced by those RF fields along the axial length of the vein wall causes the vein wall to collapse around the primary-lead electrodes. Upon collapse of the vein wall, the secondary-lead electrode is charged to have the same polarity as that of the primary-lead electrodes. The electrode device is retracted as described in the bipolar operation.

In either bipolar or monopolar operation the application of RF energy is substantially symmetrically distributed through the vein wall. As previously described, the electrodes should be spaced no more than 4 or 5 millimeters apart along the circumference of the vein, which defines the target vein diameter for a designed electrode catheter. Where the electrodes are substantially evenly spaced in a substantially symmetrical arrangement, and the spacing between the electrodes is maintained, a symmetrical distribution of RF energy increases the predictability and uniformity of the shrinkage and the strength of the occlusion.

As shown in FIG. 14, after the electrodes 34 come into apposition with the vein wall (FIG. 12), and before the energy is applied to ligate the vein (FIG. 13), an external tourniquet, such as an elastic compressive wrap or an inflatable bladder with a window transparent to ultrasound, is used to compress the anatomy, such as a leg, surrounding the structure to reduce the diameter of the vein. Although the compressive force being applied by the tourniquet may effectively ligate the vein, or otherwise occlude the vein by flattening the vein, for certain veins, this compressive force will not fully occlude the vein. A fixed diameter electrode catheter in this instance would not be effective. The electrodes 34 which are expanded outward by the formed leads 30 can accommodate this situation.

The reduction in vein diameter assists in pre-shaping the vein to prepare the vein to be molded to a ligated state. The use of an external tourniquet also exsanguinates the vein and blood is forced away from the treatment site. Coagulation of blood during treatment can be avoided by this procedure. Energy is applied from the electrodes to the exsanguinated vein, and the vein is molded to a sufficiently reduced diameter to achieve ligation. The external tourniquet can remain in place to facilitate healing.

The catheter can be pulled back during the application of RF energy to ligate an extensive section of a vein. In doing so, instead of a single point where the diameter of the vein has been reduced, an extensive section of the vein has been painted by the RF energy from the catheter. Retracting the catheter in this manner produces a lengthy occlusion which is

18

less susceptible to recanalization. The combined use of the primary and secondary electrodes can effectively produce a reduced diameter along an extensive length of the vein. The catheter can be moved while the tourniquet is compressing the vein, or after the tourniquet is removed.

Where the catheter includes a fluid delivery lumen, fluid can be delivered to the vein before RF energy is applied to the vein. The delivered fluid displaces blood from the treatment site to ensure that blood is not present at the treatment site, even after the tourniquet compresses the vein.

Where the tourniquet is an inflatable bladder with a window transparent to ultrasound, an ultrasound transducer is used to monitor the flattening or reduction of the vein diameter from the compressive force being applied by the inflating bladder. The window can be formed from polyurethane, or a stand-off of gel contained between a polyurethane pouch. A gel can be applied to the window to facilitate ultrasound imaging of the vein by the transducer. Ultrasound visualization through the window allows the operator to locate the desired venous treatment area, and to determine when the vein has been effectively ligated or occluded. Ultrasound visualization assists in monitoring any pre-shaping of the vein in preparation of being molded into a ligated state by the thermal effect produced by the RF energy from the electrodes.

After completing the procedure for a selected venous section, the actuator causes the leads 30 to return to the interior of the outer sheath 12. Once the leads 30 are within the outer sheath 12, the catheter 10 may be moved to another venous section where the ligation process is repeated.

The description of the component parts discussed above are for a catheter to be used in a vein ranging in size from 2 mm (0.08 in) to 10 mm (0.4 in) in diameter. It is to be understood that these dimensions do not limit the scope of the invention and are merely exemplary in nature. The dimensions of the component parts may be changed to configure a catheter 10 that may be used in various-sized veins or other anatomical structures.

Although described above as positively charged, negatively charged, or as a positive conductor or negative conductor, these terms are used for purposes of illustration only. These terms are generally meant to refer to different electrode potentials and are not meant to indicate that any particular voltage is positive or negative. Furthermore, other types of energy such as light energy from fiber optics can be used to create a thermal effect in the hollow anatomical structure undergoing treatment.

While several particular forms of the invention have been illustrated and described, it will be apparent that various modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Accordingly, it is not intended that the invention be limited, except as by the appended claims

What is claimed is:

1. A method of treating venous insufficiency, the method comprising the steps of:

introducing an elongate member into a vein having an inner wall;

flattening the vein such that the inner wall of the vein is brought toward a distal region of the elongate member; applying energy from the distal region of the elongate member to the vein to create a thermal effect in the vein so as to reduce the diameter of the vein and lead to occlusion of the vein;

retracting the elongate member along the vein during the step of applying energy.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein a lengthy occlusion is formed along the area of the vein in which the elongate member is retracted during the step of applying energy.

## US 7,406,970 B2

19

3. The method of claim 1, further comprising the step of delivering fluid to the vein where the distal region of the elongate member is located.

4. The method of claim 3, wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering saline to the vein.

5. The method of claim 3, wherein the step of delivering fluid comprises the step of delivering dielectric fluid to the vein.

6. The method of claim 1, wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy.

7. The method of claim 1, wherein the elongate member is a catheter having electrodes and the step of applying energy includes the step of applying electrical energy from the electrodes.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein the elongate member is a fiber optic and the step of applying light energy comprises applying light energy with the fiber optic.

10. The method of claim 1, further comprising the step of monitoring the vein during the step of flattening the vein.

11. The method of claim 1, further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the distal region of the elongate member in the vein during the step of applying energy.

12. The method of claim 1, wherein the vein is a varicose vein.

13. The method of claim 1, wherein the step of flattening the vein includes the step of compressing the anatomy surrounding the vein at the location of the distal region of the elongate member.

14. The method of claim 1, wherein the step of flattening the vein includes the step of using an elastic compressive

20

wrap around the anatomy surrounding the vein at the location of the distal region of the elongate member.

15. A method of treating venous insufficiency, the method comprising the steps of:

5 introducing an elongate member having an axis into a vein having an inner wall;

moving the inner wall of the vein toward the axis of the elongate member at a distal region of the elongate member, independently of the elongate member;

10 applying energy from the distal region of the elongate member to the vein to create a thermal effect in the vein so as to reduce the diameter of the vein and lead to occlusion of the vein;

15 retracting the elongate member along the vein during the step of applying energy to form an occlusion along the area of the vein where the elongate member is retracted during the step of applying energy.

16. The method of claim 15, further comprising the step of monitoring the temperature at the distal region of the elongate member in the vein during the step of applying energy.

17. The method of claim 15, wherein the step of moving the vein includes the step of compressing the anatomy surrounding the vein at the location of the distal region of the elongate member.

18. The method of claim 15, wherein the elongate member is a catheter and the step of applying energy includes the step of applying RF energy with the catheter.

19. The method of claim 15, wherein the step of applying energy includes the step of applying light energy.

20. The method of claim 19, wherein the elongate member is a fiber optic and the step of applying light energy comprises applying light energy with the fiber optic.

\* \* \* \* \*